

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the Vodafone 904T handset.

- To ensure proper usage, read this manual thoroughly before using the 904T handset.
- After reading this manual, keep it in a safe place for later reference.
- If this manual is lost or damaged, contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).
- Accessible services may be limited because of contract conditions.

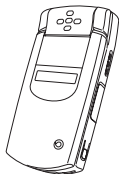
The 904T handset is compatible with the W-CDMA and GSM systems.

Caution

- Unauthorised copying of any part of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
- Not all functions and services described in this user guide are available in Japan.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this manual. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).
- Manuals with missing pages or incorrect collating will be replaced.

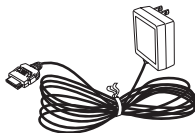
What's in the Box

- Handset



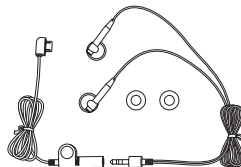
- Battery Cover
- Utility Software for 904T (CD-ROM)*
- 3G Guide (Japanese only)

- Rapid Charger (TSCS01)



- Battery Pack (TSBAE1)
- User Guide

- Stereo Handsfree Headset



- USB Cable (TSDAC1)
- First Step Guide (Japanese only)

*Upgrades or updates of included utility software may become available on the Vodafone Website (www.vodafone.jp) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions of utility applications and download as required.

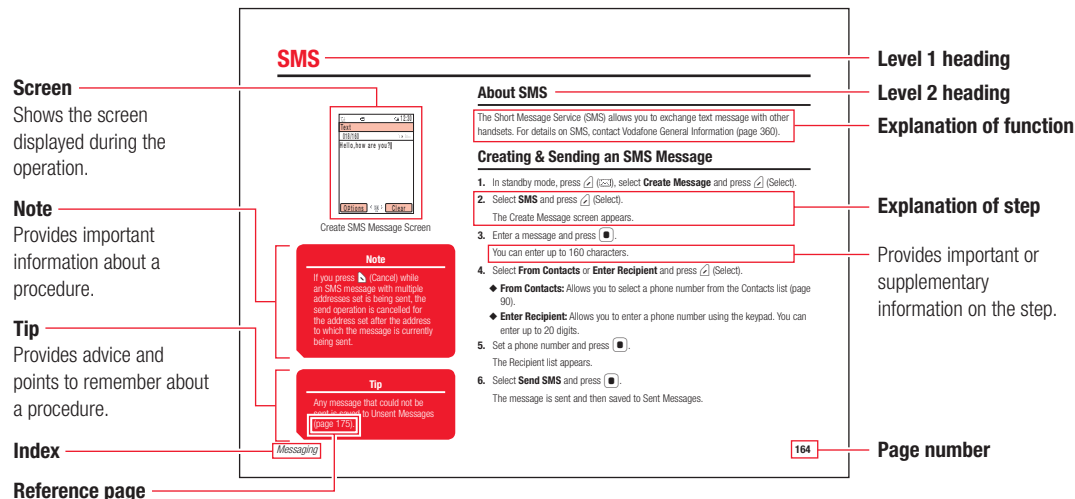
- In addition to the above items, optional items such as a desk top cradle, cigarette lighter charger and video output cable are available. For details, contact your nearest Vodafone Shop or Vodafone General Information (page 360).
- You can use a miniSD™ memory card (hereafter referred to as a memory card) with your handset. A memory card is not supplied with your handset. Purchase a commercially available memory card to use memory card functions. Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 1GB (as of February 2006). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset.

Contents

Introduction	1		
What's in the Box	2		
Contents	3		
About this Manual	5		
Symbols Used in This Manual	6		
Safety Precautions	7		
General Notes for Handling	19		
Trademarks and Patents	25		
1 Basic Operations	30		
Parts & Functions	31		
Opening & Closing Your Handset	40		
USIM Card	42		
Battery Pack	45		
Memory Cards	47		
Turning Power On/Off	48		
System Mode Setting	49		
Language Setting	52		
Date & Time Settings	53		
Accessing Functions	56		
Making a Call	58		
Answering a Call	59		
Engaged Call Operations	60		
Call Log	62		
Optional Services	66		
Text Entry	75		
Phonebook	81		
2 Media Player	99		
Media Player Menu	100		
Playback Screen of Media Player	101		
Playing Music & Videos	102		
Using Playlists	105		
Other Operations & Settings	107		
Music Player	108		
3 Video Call	109		
About Video Calls	110		
Making a Video Call	111		
Answering a Video Call	112		
Convenient Functions for Video Calls	113		
Video Call Settings	117		
4 Camera/Video Camera	120		
Camera	121		
Pictures	125		
Videos	137		
Picture & Video Settings	141		
5 Messaging	150		
Messaging Capabilities	151		
MMS	153		
SMS	164		
MMS/SMS Common Operations	169		
6 Vodafone live!	176		
Accessing Vodafone live!	177		
Bookmarks	179		
Operations for Web Pages	181		
Browser Settings	184		
V-appli	185		
7 Vodafone live! CAST	191		
Vodafone live! CAST	192		
Subscribing/Cancelling Subscription	193		
Checking Content Updates	194		
Downloading Content Manually	195		
Checking History	196		
8 Vodafone live! NAVI	197		
Vodafone live! NAVI and Location Information	198		
Starting a Navigation Application	199		
Checking Your Current Position	200		
Using Location Logs	201		
Using My Locations	202		
Quick Positioning	204		
Settings	205		
9 Vodafone live! FeliCa	208		
Vodafone live! FeliCa	209		
Using Vodafone live! FeliCa	211		
Checking the IC Card Information	214		
Preventing Vodafone live! FeliCa Usage	215		
Interface Settings	218		
10 Data Folder	219		
Data Folder	220		
Using Files & Folders	222		
Displaying Files on a TV	225		
Using vObjects	227		
Using a Memory Card	229		
Using the USIM Card	231		
11 Settings	235		
Mode Settings	236		
Display Settings	244		
Phone Settings	252		
Call Settings	257		
Security Settings	267		
Memory Settings	277		
Network Settings	278		
Shortcut Menu	281		
12 Convenient Functions	282		
Calendar	283		
Alarms	287		
Dictionary	289		
Calculator	290		
Converter	291		
Voice Recorder	292		
Countdown Timer	294		

Notepad.....	295
Number Memo.....	296
World Clock.....	297
Backup.....	298
Barcode.....	300
Flashlight.....	303
Sending Touch Tones.....	304
13 File Transfer & Synchronisation	306
Bluetooth™.....	307
Infrared.....	315
USB Cable.....	319
Vodafone Address Book.....	325
14 Appendix	339
Default Settings.....	340
Troubleshooting.....	347
Storage Capacity.....	349
Main Specifications.....	350
Glossary.....	351
Index.....	353
Warranty & After Sales Service.....	358
Customer Service.....	360

About this Manual



About Screens

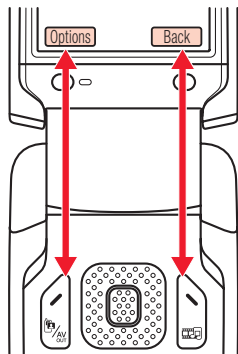
The screen illustrations appearing in this manual may differ from the actual screen image appearing on the handset.



Symbols Used in This Manual

Using Soft Keys

Press soft keys to perform operations indicated at the bottom of the main display.

- For details on the external soft keys, see page 41.








- Press  to access Options menu.
- Press  to return to the previous screen.

Using the Navigation Key

Use the navigation key to move the cursor, access functions, display the Main menu, confirm selected items and perform selected operations.




- For details on the external navigation key, see page 41.

Operation (Notation Used in This Manual)	Function
Press up 	Accesses the Shortcut menu Increases the volume Moves the cursor up
Press down 	Accesses the Contacts list Decreases the volume Moves the cursor down
Press left 	Access Dialed Numbers Decreases the volume Moves the cursor left
Press right 	Access Received Calls Increases the volume Moves the cursor right
Press centre 	Accesses the Main menu Confirms the selected item or performs the selected operation Acts as the shutter button for the camera



Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper usage, be sure to read the Safety Precautions thoroughly before using your handset. Always keep this manual available for future reference.
 - Be sure to follow the safety information contained in the instruction manuals and indicated on the product to prevent injury to the user and other persons, as well as damage to property.
 - When a child uses the handset, it is recommended that a parent or guardian reads the instruction manuals thoroughly and provides proper instructions to the child.
 - The following describes the meaning of safety symbols and signal words. Be sure to understand their meanings before proceeding to read this manual.
- 1 Serious injury includes loss of sight, wounds, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (burns causing reddish areas, blistering and other damage to the skin as a result of heat exceeding the body temperature contacting your skin for a prolonged time), electric shock, fractures and poisoning requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.
 - 2 Injury includes wounds, burns and electric shock not requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.
 - 3 Damage to property includes extensive damage to homes and household property, as well as livestock and pets.

Pictograph Descriptions

Pictograph	Meaning
 Danger	Indicates an imminently hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury ¹ of the user.
 Warning	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury ¹ of the user.
 Caution	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in minor or moderate injury ² to the user or damage to property ³ .

Symbol Descriptions

Symbol	Meaning
 Prohibited	⊘ indicates a prohibited action. The prohibited action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.
 Compulsory	❗ indicates a compulsory action that must be carried out. The compulsory action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.

Limitation of Liability

- Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from natural disasters such as earthquakes, lightning, storms and floods, as well as fires through no fault of Vodafone and Toshiba, acts by third parties, other accidents, improper use by the user, whether intentionally or negligently, or use under other abnormal conditions.
- Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for incidental damages arising out of the use or inability to use the product, including, but not limited to, corruption or loss of data, lost business revenue or suspension of business operations.
- Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from improper use not conforming to the instructions in the instruction manuals.
- Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from malfunctions caused by use in combination with connection equipment or software that is not authorized for use by Vodafone and Toshiba.
- Image data recorded with the camera, downloaded data and other data may be corrupted or lost due to malfunction, repair or other improper handling of the product. Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the restoration of corrupted or lost data, as well as any damages or lost revenue and profits.
- Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for corruption or loss of stored data resulting from failures or malfunctions of the product, regardless of the cause. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.

Danger



No
disassembly

Do not disassemble, modify or repair the handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Handsfree Headset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock, injury or malfunction. Modification of the handset is prohibited by Japanese Radio Law. For repair, contact your nearest Vodafone Shop or Vodafone Customer Assistance (page 360).



No flames

Do not dispose of the handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Handsfree Headset in a fire or expose it to heat

If the handset or battery pack is exposed to water, do not dry it artificially in heating equipment (microwave oven, etc.)

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



No flames

Do not charge, use or leave the handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Handsfree Headset in hot places such as near a fire or heater

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

Danger



Keep water
away

Do not expose the handset, charger, battery pack or Stereo Handsfree Headset to fluids such as water, perspiration or seawater

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock or malfunction. If the handset is dropped accidentally in water or any other fluid, immediately turn off the handset and contact your nearest Vodafone Shop or Vodafone Customer Assistance (page 360).



Keep water
away

Do not leave the handset, charger, battery pack or Stereo Handsfree Headset outdoors, in a bathroom or wherever water or any other fluid is used

Do not place the handset, charger or battery pack near cups, vases or other containers of fluids

Exposure to water or other fluids may cause electric shock, overheating, rupturing or fire.



Prohibited

Do not use excessive force when inserting the battery pack into the handset or connecting the handset to the charger

Do not connect any cords with reverse polarity

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, rupture, overheat or catch fire, as well as cause electric shock or malfunction.



Prohibited

Do not touch the battery pack connectors (metal parts) with any metal objects (necklace, hairpin, etc.)

Doing so may cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire, as well as the metal object to overheat.



Compulsory

Do not use a battery pack other than one supplied with or designated for the handset

Do not use the battery pack for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Compulsory

Do not use a charger other than one supplied with or designated for the handset to charge the battery pack

Do not use the charger for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

Warning



Prohibited

Do not charge the battery pack while it is wet or damp

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock or short circuit. If the battery pack is exposed to fluids such as water, unplug the rapid charger immediately.



Prohibited

Do not use the handset while driving Do not make or receive a call and do not use other functions (messaging, game, camera, video, music, mobile light, etc.)

Doing so may cause a traffic accident. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking or stopping is permitted.



Prohibited

Do not use the handset wherever there is the risk of a fire or explosion such as in a petrol station

Doing so may ignite the gases and start a fire or explosion. Turn off the handset and do not charge it wherever gases may be present (petrol station, etc.).



Prohibited

Do not swing the handset by its strap, a video output cable or the Stereo Handsfree Headset

Doing so may cause an injury, accident or damage.



Compulsory

Turn off the handset while you are near any precision electronic equipment

Radio waves may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment. Examples of such equipment: medical electronic equipment such as cardiac pacemakers and hearing aids or fire alarms and automatic doors. If you use medical electronic equipment, consult with the equipment manufacturer or distributor about the influence of radio waves.



Unplug power
cable

Remove the power plug from the outlet if the rapid charger is not to be used for a long period of time or before cleaning

Failing to do so may cause an electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Compulsory

Turn off the handset wherever its use is prohibited such as on an aircraft

Turn off the handset after cancelling any settings such as schedule and alarm settings that turn on the handset automatically

Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.



Compulsory

Check your surroundings to confirm that it is safe to make/receive calls, send/receive messages, take pictures or record videos

Failing to do so may cause you to trip over or cause a traffic accident.

Warning



Do not use the handset with any power voltage other than the specified voltage

Compulsory

Doing so may cause a fire. The power voltages are 100 to 240 V AC for the rapid charger and 12 or 24 V DC (for a negative ground car only) for a cigarette lighter charger.



Wipe away any dust on the plug of the rapid charger with a dry cloth after removing the plug from the outlet

Compulsory

Dust on the plug or outlet may cause a fire.



Follow the instructions below when installing and wiring in-vehicle devices

Compulsory

- **Make sure that devices do not interfere with driving and safety equipment such as airbags**
- **Make sure that wires are not caught in seatbelt buckles, doors or other moving parts**

Any wire caught around a foot, brake pedal, accelerator pedal, etc. may interfere with driving and cause a traffic accident. If any part of an in-vehicle device drops onto the floor, it may startle you into abrupt braking or steering, leading to a traffic accident.



If electrolyte fluid leaking from the battery pack gets into your eyes, wash your eyes immediately with clean water and have your eyes treated by an ophthalmologist

Compulsory

Failing to receive treatment for your eyes may result in eye injury.



When thunder is heard outside, stop using the handset immediately

Compulsory

Turn off the handset and do not touch it

Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock. When thunder is heard, stop using the handset and move to a safe place such as inside a building.



If the battery pack fails to charge in the specified time, stop charging immediately

Compulsory

Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing or fire. Contact your nearest Vodafone Shop or Vodafone Customer Assistance (page 360).



When inserting the rapid charger plug into an AC household outlet, make sure that a metal strap or any other metal object does not touch the plug

Compulsory

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit or fire.

Warning



Compulsory

If something unusual happens to the handset, battery pack or charger; for example, it emits smoke or an unusual odour or is damaged, perform the following steps immediately

1. If the battery pack is charging, unplug the rapid charger from the AC household outlet or unplug the cigarette lighter charger from the cigarette lighter socket.
2. Make sure that the handset is not hot, then turn it off and remove the battery pack.

Failing to do so and continuing use (charging) may cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire or the handset to overheat. If something unusual happens, contact your nearest Vodafone Shop or Vodafone Customer Assistance (page 360).



Prohibited

Do not drop the handset or battery pack or subject it to excessive shock

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Prohibited

Do not sit down with the handset in your trousers pocket

Excess weight may damage the display, battery pack or other parts resulting in overheating, fire or injury.



Compulsory

If the handset is used near an implanted cardiac pacemaker, defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, radio waves may interfere with such a device or equipment

Observe the following guidelines

1. If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator, carry and use the handset at a distance of at least 22 centimetres away from the implanted device.
2. Turn off the handset in crowded places such as packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator may be nearby. Radio waves can interfere with the operation of a cardiac pacemaker or other medical device.
3. Follow the precautions below in medical institutions.
 - Do not bring the handset into an operating room, intensive care unit or coronary care unit.
 - Turn off the handset in a hospital ward.
 - Turn off the handset in a lobby or other location close to medical equipment.
 - Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use the handset in or bring it into prohibited areas.
 - Turn off the handset after cancelling any settings such as schedule and alarm settings that turn on the handset automatically.

Warning

4. When using electronic medical devices other than an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator outside of medical institutions (such as at home), consult with the individual medical device manufacturer about the possible influence of radio waves.

The above information conforms to "The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, April 1997), as well as refers to "The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



Prohibited

Do not use the rapid charger with any power supply other than a 100 to 240 V AC household power supply

Doing so may result in a fire, as well as cause the charger to overheat, catch fire or malfunction.

Caution



Prohibited

Do not use or leave the handset or battery pack in places where it will be exposed to direct sunlight or in hot places such as inside a car in the sun

Doing so may cause overheating, fire or malfunction.



Prohibited

Keep the handset, battery pack and charger away from infants and small children

Failing to do so may result in the battery pack or a memory card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.



Prohibited

Make sure that the charger terminals (metal parts) do not come into contact with wires or other metal objects

Failing to do so may cause overheating or burns.



Prohibited

Do not pull the cord when unplugging the rapid charger or cigarette lighter charger from an AC household outlet or socket

Damage to the cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.

Hold the plug when unplugging the rapid charger or cigarette lighter charger.



Prohibited

Do not pull, bend with excessive force or twist the cords of the rapid charger and cigarette lighter charger

Do not damage or modify them

Do not place objects on them

Do not apply heat and keep them away from heaters

Damage to a cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



No wet hands

Do not plug or unplug the rapid charger with wet hands

Doing so may cause electric shock or malfunction.



Prohibited

Keep magnetic cards away from the handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing the handset

Failing to do so may cause the magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.



Prohibited

Do not use the handset in a vehicle if it affects in-vehicle electronic devices

Use of the handset in some types of vehicles may, in some rare cases, affect in-vehicle electronic devices and interfere with safe driving.

Caution



Prohibited

Do not place the handset on an unstable or unlevel surface

Doing so may result in the handset falling and causing injury or malfunction. Be particularly careful when vibration is set.



Prohibited

Do not dispose of the used battery pack with ordinary garbage

Insulate the connectors with tape and then dispose of the used battery pack separately from ordinary garbage or take it to your nearest Vodafone Shop. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.



Prohibited

Do not touch the handset with sweaty hands or place it into a pocket of sweaty clothes

Sweat and humidity may erode the internal components of the handset and cause overheating or malfunction.



Prohibited

Do not use a cigarette lighter charger when the car engine is not running

Doing so may result in a flat battery.



Compulsory

If the fuse for a cigarette lighter charger blows, replace it with a designated fuse

Replacing the fuse with other than a designated fuse may cause overheating and fire.

For details on replacing the fuse, refer to the instruction manual of the cigarette lighter charger.



Compulsory

If fluid leaking from the battery pack comes into contact with skin or clothing, wash it away immediately with clean water

Failing to do so may cause skin irritation.

Caution

 If your skin becomes irritated, immediately stop using the handset and consult with a dermatologist

Compulsory The following materials and surface treatments have been used for the handset. Some of these materials may cause itching, irritation, eczema, etc. in some rare cases depending on the individual's constitution and physical condition.

Part	Material (Surface Treatment)
Outer housing (keypad, external display decorative panel), keys, mobile light panel (transparent section)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Outer housing (main display side)	Magnesium alloy (baked acrylic coating)
Outer housing (external display side, hinge side covers, battery compartment), screw covers (earpiece, below main display)	PPE resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Outer housing (external camera section)	ABS resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Outer housing (infrared port section, mobile light panel (coloured section), screw covers (bottom of battery compartment)	PC/ABS resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Main display panel, internal camera panel, external camera panel	Acrylic resin (UV cured acrylic ink)

Part	Material (Surface Treatment)
External display panel	Tempered glass (polyester film)
Stops	Urethane acrylate resin
External light (light section), charging indicator (light section)	PC resin
External light (cushioning section), charging indicator (cushioning section), opening/closing stops, screw covers (bottom of battery compartment)	Polyester elastomer resin
Logo badge	UV cured acrylic resin
Cable connector cap, earphone microphone jack cap, memory card slot cap	Polyester elastomer resin (urethane coating)
Handset charging connector	Steel (gold coating, nickel undercoat)
Infrared port	Acrylic resin
Screws	Steel (nickel coating, copper undercoat)
Screw covers (hinge section)	PET resin
Speaker hole mesh	Stainless steel
Macro switch	ABS resin

Caution



Compulsory

Before using the handset, make sure that no metal objects (such as pins) are stuck to the earpiece

Failing to do so may result in a metal object causing an ear injury, etc.



Compulsory

If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration and ringtone volume settings

Failing to do so may startle you and may be harmful to your heart.



Compulsory

Be careful not to trap your fingers or objects when closing the handset and not to trap your fingers in the hinge when opening the handset

Failing to do so may cause injury or damage to the LCD display.



Prohibited

Do not use the mobile light and flashlight for purposes other than taking pictures, recording videos or lighting

Doing so may dazzle the eyes and cause impaired vision or other injury.



Prohibited

Make sure things like paper, cloth and bedding are not placed on the handset during charging using a USB connection, AC adapter, etc.

Failing to do so may cause overheating, fire, burns or malfunction.



Compulsory

Do not turn the volume up too high while using the Stereo Handsfree Headset

Prolonged exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing or sound leakage may annoy other people around you. Surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly resulting in an accident.



Prohibited

Do not insert objects other than a memory card into the memory card slot

Doing so may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction.

Cover the slot with the cap at times other than when you are inserting or removing a memory card.



Prohibited

Keep your face away from the memory card slot when inserting or removing a memory card

Keep a memory card out of the reach of small children

If a memory card is let go of suddenly, it may fly out and hit your face resulting in injury.

Caution



Prohibited

Do not subject a memory card to vibration or shock or remove it from the slot or turn off the handset while data is being written to or read from the memory card

Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.



Prohibited

Use only a memory card supported by the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

The handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 1GB (as of February 2006).



Prohibited

Do not let children use cables such as a video output cable or the Stereo Handsfree Headset unsupervised and keep cables out of infant's reach

An injury may be caused if, for instance, the cable is wrapped around a neck.



Prohibited

Do not point the infrared port towards eyes while using the infrared communication

Doing so may cause eye damage.



Prohibited

Do not use the mobile light close to eyes

Doing so may cause eye damage. Be especially careful not to take pictures or record videos with the mobile light too close to the eyes of infants.



Prohibited

Do not use excessive force when inserting or removing the USIM card

Doing so may cause a malfunction. Be careful not to injure a hand or finger when removing the card.



Prohibited

Use only a USIM card designated for the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.



Prohibited

Do not remove the polyester film from the external display

Using the handset without the polyester film to protect against shattering of the reinforced glass may result in an injury if the external display is damaged.

General Notes for Handling

Using Your Handset

- The handset employs radio waves. Signals may be disrupted even within service areas if you are indoors, underground, inside a tunnel or inside a vehicle. If you move to a location with poor signal reception, a call may be suddenly cut off.
 - When using the handset in public places, take care not to annoy other people around you. Use of the handset is prohibited in some public places such as in theatres or on buses and trains.
 - The handset is a radio transceiver under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit the handset for inspection based on this law.
 - Use of the handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the image and sound quality of the equipment.
 - The handset employs a digital system to maintain a high level of communication quality even at very low signal levels. However, calls may be suddenly cut off when the signal strength becomes too weak.
 - The digital system provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of someone eavesdropping on your conversation cannot be ruled out as long as radio waves are used.
 - Data stored on the handset may be corrupted or lost on the following occasions.
 - The handset is used improperly.
 - The handset is exposed to static electricity or electric noise.
 - The handset is turned off during operation.
 - The battery pack is completely discharged.
 - The handset malfunctions or is sent for repairs.
- Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the corruption or loss of stored data. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.
- Be sure to charge the battery pack before using the handset for the first time or if the handset has not been used for a long time. When the battery pack is stored for a long time, it discharges over time even if it is not used.
 - Before using a memory card, read the instruction manual of the memory card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
 - When the handset is used for extended periods of time, especially in high temperature conditions, the handset surface could become hot. Please use caution when touching the handset under such conditions.
 - When certain items are taken out of the country, documentation may be required to certify that the export of the items is not controlled, prohibited, or restricted by the Export Trade Control Order and Foreign Exchange Order. Basically, no such documentation is required if you take the handset out of the country and bring it back for the purpose of personal use when going on vacations or short business trips. In some cases, however, an export permit may be required if the handset is to be used by or transferred to anyone else. Furthermore, a US government export permit may be required when taking the handset to countries for which the US government has imposed export restrictions (Cuba, Libya, North Korea, Iran, Sudan, Syria).

For details on export laws, regulations and procedures, refer to the Web page of the Security Export Control Policy Division of the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.

- If you have hearing aids, use of the handset may interfere with some operations of the hearing aids. If there is any interference, consult with the manufacturer or distributor of the hearing aids.

Inside Vehicles

- Do not use the handset while driving. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law.
- Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking or stopping is permitted.

Aboard Aircraft

- Do not use the handset on an aircraft. Turn off the handset after cancelling any settings such as schedule and alarm settings that turn on the handset automatically. Do not turn the handset back on while you are on the aircraft. Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.

Electromagnetic Waves

- For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

Handling Basics

- Do not use the handset in extreme temperatures, direct sunlight and humid or dusty places.
- Do not drop the handset or subject it to excessive shock.
- To clean the handset, wipe it with a dry soft cloth. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or other solvents. Doing so may cause discoloration and remove the printed logo.
- Take care not to expose the handset to rain, snow or high humidity. The handset, battery pack, charger, Stereo Handsfree Headset and other optional accessories are not waterproof.
- Do not remove the battery pack while the power is turned on. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- If the battery pack has been removed from the handset or the handset has not been charged for a long time, stored data and settings may be lost or altered. Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damage or loss resulting from such negligence.
- The battery pack is a consumable item employing lithium ions. Replace the battery pack with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short after it is fully charged. Buy a new battery pack designated for the handset.
- When disposing of a used battery pack after battery pack replacement or discontinued use of the handset, insulate the connectors with tape or place the battery pack into a plastic bag and then take it to your nearest Vodafone Shop or battery pack recycling cooperative store. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.



Li-ion

- Some handset display pixels may be missing or remain lit. This is not a defect or malfunction. If the display is left on for a long period of time, pictures may be permanently burned into it.
- Make sure the Stereo Handsfree Headset is securely plugged into the earphone microphone jack. Failing to do so may generate noise on the other party's phone during calls.
- Do not turn the volume up too high when using the Stereo Handsfree Headset. Prolonged exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing or sound leakage may annoy other people around you. Surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly while you are doing something such as walking resulting in an accident.
- When not using the earphone microphone jack and external connector, make sure they are covered with the caps. Otherwise, dust and water may enter the handset, resulting in malfunction.
- Hold the plug and do not pull the cord when unplugging the Stereo Handsfree Headset or a video output cable. Pulling the cord may cause damage or malfunction.
- Do not close the handset with the strap, USB cable, Stereo Handsfree Headset or a video output cable inside. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.
- The antenna of the handset is built into the body and does not protrude. Signal sensitivity may be reduced if you touch or cover the portion of the body containing the internal antenna (pages 31, 32). In particular, do not affix things like stickers onto this portion of the body.
- When you replace the handset or send it for repair, messages and other data stored in the handset cannot be transferred to another handset.
- Do not drop the USIM card or subject it to excessive shock. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not bend the USIM card or place a heavy object on it. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not allow the USIM card to get wet or leave it in places of high humidity. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not use or leave the USIM card in hot places such as near a fire or heater. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Avoid storing the USIM card in direct sunlight or hot and humid places. Failing to do so may cause a malfunction.
- Keep the USIM card out of infants' reach. Failing to do so may result in the USIM card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.
- Before using the USIM card, read the instruction manual of the USIM card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.

Mobile Camera

- Be sure to observe proper etiquette when using the camera.
- Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight. Concentrated sunlight through the lens may cause the handset to malfunction.
- Be sure to try taking and previewing pictures before using the camera on important occasions like wedding ceremonies.
- Do not commercially use or transfer pictures taken with the camera without the permission of the copyright holder (photographer), except for personal use.
- Do not use the camera in locations where taking photos and recording videos are prohibited.

Mobile Light & External Light

- Do not use the mobile light in hot, cold or humid places. Doing so may shorten its life.
- The mobile light and external light have a limited life. Repeated use will decrease the light intensity.

Copyrights

- Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Making copies (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copies for purposes other than stated above without proper authorization constitutes an infringement of copyrights and moral rights, potentially resulting in claims for reparations or criminal punishment. If you use the handset to make copies, observe the copyright laws. Furthermore, recording materials using the camera is also subject to the same laws.

Right of Portrait

- Portrait right is the right of an individual to refuse to be photographed by others and protects from the unauthorized publication or use of an individual's photograph by others. Right of personality is a portrait right applicable to all citizens and right of publicity is a portrait right (property right) designed to protect celebrities' interests. Be careful when taking pictures with the handset camera. Photographing, publicizing and distributing photographs of citizens and celebrities without permission are illegal.

TOSHIBA CORPORATION

IMPORTANT NOTE: PLEASE READ BEFORE USING YOUR HANDSET

BY ATTEMPTING TO USE ANY SOFTWARE ON THE SUPPLIED HANDSET THIS CONSTITUTES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE EULA TERMS. IF YOU REJECT OR DO NOT AGREE WITH ALL THE TERMS OF THIS EULA, PLEASE DO NOT ATTEMPT TO ACCESS OR USE THE SUPPLIED SOFTWARE.

End User License Agreement

This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (as the user) and TOSHIBA CORPORATION ("Toshiba") with regard to the copyrighted software as installed in a Toshiba 3G handset supplied to you (the "Handset").

Use or disposal of any software installed in the Handset and related documentations (the "Software") will constitute your acceptance of these terms, unless separate terms are provided by the Software supplier on the Handset, in which case certain additional or different terms may apply. If you do not agree with the terms of this EULA, do not use or dispose the Software.

1. **License Grant.** Toshiba grants to you a personal, non-transferable and non-exclusive right to use the Software as set out in this EULA. Modifying, adapting, translating, renting, copying, making available, transferring or assigning all or part of the Software, or any rights granted hereunder, to any other persons and removing any proprietary notices, labels or marks from the Software is strictly prohibited, except as expressly permitted in this EULA. Furthermore, you hereby agree not to

create derivative works based on the Software.

2. **Copyright.** The Software is licensed, not sold. You acknowledge that no title to the intellectual property in the Software is or will be transferred to you. You further acknowledge that title and full ownership rights to the Software will remain the exclusive property of Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates, and/or their suppliers, and you will not acquire any rights to the Software, except as expressly set out in this EULA. You may keep a back-up copy of the Software only so far as necessary for its lawful use. All copies of the Software must contain the same proprietary notices as contained in or on the Software and are subject to the terms of this EULA. All rights not expressly granted under this EULA are reserved to Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates and/or their suppliers.
3. **Reverse Engineering.** You agree that you will not attempt, and if you are a business organisation, you will use your best efforts to prevent your employees, servants and contractors from attempting to reverse engineer, decompile, modify, translate or disassemble the Software in whole or in part except to the extent that such actions cannot be excluded by mandatory applicable law and only if those actions are taken in accordance with such applicable law. Any failure to comply with the above or any other terms and conditions contained herein will result in the automatic termination of this license and the reversion of the rights granted hereunder to Toshiba.
4. **DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY.** The Software is provided "AS IS" without warranty of any kind. **TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES, AND THEIR SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL**

WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS OR OTHER TERMS (WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED), INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS AND TERMS OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS; AND THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE IS WITH YOU. YOU ACCEPT THAT SOFTWARE MAY NOT MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS AND NO WARRANTY CAN BE GIVEN THAT OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE.

- 5. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT LEGALLY PERMITTED, IN NO EVENT SHALL TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES FOR (A) LOST BUSINESS OR REVENUE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS DATA; OR (B) CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES OF ANY KIND (WHETHER UNDER CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) ARISING OUT OF: (I) THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES; OR (II) ANY CLAIM BY A THIRD PARTY. SAVE AS SET OUT IN THIS SECTION, TOSHIBA'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER THIS EULA SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE, IF ANY.**

PLEASE MAKE AND RETAIN A COPY OF ALL DATA YOU HAVE INSERTED INTO YOUR PRODUCT, FOR EXAMPLE NAMES,

ADDRESSES, PHONE NUMBERS, PICTURES, RINGTONES ETC, BEFORE SUBMITTING YOUR PRODUCT FOR A WARRANTY SERVICE, AS SUCH DATA MAY BE DELETED OR ERASED AS PART OF THE REPAIR OR SERVICE PROCESS.

- 6. Laws.** This EULA will be governed by the laws of Japan. All disputes arising out of this EULA shall be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Tokyo District Court.
- 7. Export Laws.** Any use, duplication or disposal of the Software involves products and/or technical data that may be controlled under the export laws of applicable countries or region and may be subject to the approval of the applicable governmental authorities prior to export. Any export, directly or indirectly, in contravention of the export laws of applicable countries or region is prohibited.
- 8. Third Party Beneficiary.** You agree that certain suppliers of the Software to Toshiba have a right as a third party beneficiary to enforce the terms of this EULA against you as a user.

Trademarks and Patents

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,778,338	5,490,165
5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261
5,568,483	5,414,796	5,659,569
5,056,109	5,506,865	5,228,054
5,544,196	5,337,338	5,657,420
5,710,784		



Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



The miniSD™ Logo is a trademark.

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson multimedia.

Powered by Mascot Capsule® / Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI Corporation © 2002-2003 HI Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Bluetooth™ is a trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.USA.



THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG-LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).



T9 Text Input is covered by Japan Pat.No.特許 3532780,3492981 and other patents pending.

Copyright © 1998-2003 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT AND/OR BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT, ERIC YOUNG OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso wave Incorporated.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

 is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.



Edy is a brand name of the prepaid-type electronic money service managed by bitWallet, Inc.

Vodafone, Vodafone live!, My Vodafone and Speech Mark Device are registered trademarks or trademarks of Vodafone Group Plc.

V-appli, Movie Sha-mail, Navi Appli and Custom Screen are registered trademarks or trademarks of Vodafone K.K.

€ 0682

All other company names and trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

FCC Notice

The handset may cause TV or radio interference if used in close proximity to receiving equipment. The FCC can require you to stop using the handset if such interference cannot be eliminated.

Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving aerial.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Caution: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.619W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.749W/kg. Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorisation for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after searching on SP2-CC4-S02.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.620W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide**. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.555W/ kg*.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a 'hands-free' device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body. Additional Information can be found on the websites of the World Health Organization (<http://www.who.int/emf>).

* The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

** Please see the <FCC RF Exposure Information> section about body worn operation.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

We, **Toshiba Information Systems UK (Ltd), Mobile Communications Division**
of **Toshiba Court**
Weybridge Business Park
Addlestone Road
Weybridge
KT15 2UL

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

V904T
Type (Model) Name is CC4 - S02
UMTS & GSM/DCS/PCS Terminal (Tri band 900, 1800 & 1900)

to which this declaration relates, is in conformity with the following standards and/or other normative documents.

3GPP TS 51.010-1, 3GPP TS 34.121, EN 301 489-1, EN 301 489-7, EN 301-489-24,
EN 300 328, EN 301 489-17, EN 60950 and EN 50360

We hereby declare that all essential radio test suites, EMC & safety requirements have been carried out and that the above named product is in conformity to all the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC.

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10(5) and detailed in Annex IV of Directive 199/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body(ies):

Cetecom GmbH, Im Teelbuech 122, 45219 Essen, Germany

Identification mark: **0682**

The technical documentation relevant to the above equipment will be held at:

Toshiba Information Systems UK (Ltd), Mobile Communications Division
Riverside Way, Camberley, Surrey, GU15 3YA

Name:- **Noritaka Tanigawa**

Title:- **Deputy Managing Director of TIU**
General Manager Mobile Communications Division

Signature:- 

Date:- **16.12.2005**



INVESTING IN PEOPLE

Registered Office: Toshiba Court, Weybridge Business Park, Addlestone Road, Weybridge, Surrey KT15 2UL
Registered Number: 919861 England. Telephone (Switchboard) 01932 841600 Facsimile 01932 852455
www.toshiba.co.uk



Basic Operations

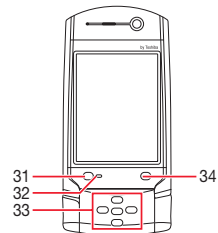
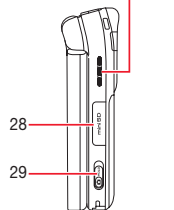
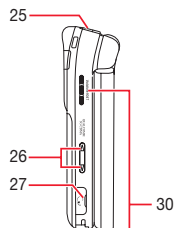
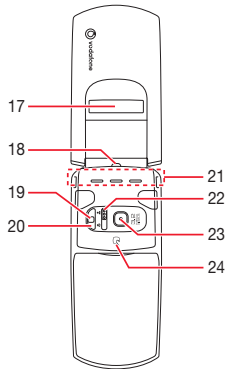
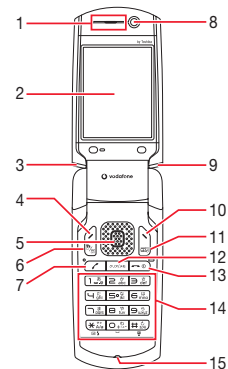
This chapter explains the basic operations and functions of your handset.

In This Chapter

- **Parts & Functions**
- **Opening & Closing Your Handset**
- **USIM Card**
- **Battery Pack**
- **Memory Cards**
- **Turning Power On/Off**
- **System Mode Setting**
- **Language Setting**
- **Date & Time Settings**
- **Accessing Functions**
- **Making a Call**
- **Answering a Call**
- **Engaged Call Operations**
- **Call Log**
- **Optional Services**
- **Text Entry**
- **Phonebook**

Parts & Functions
















Handset



Turnover style

Attaching the Handstrap



1. **Earpiece**
2. **Main Display**
3. **External Light**: Flashes for incoming calls, messages, etc.
4. **Left Soft Key** : Select items and access the Options menu.
Also use this key to access the Messaging menu from standby mode.
5. **Navigation Key** : Move cursor up, down, left or right, access functions assigned to the navigation key, etc.
Centre Key : Access the Main menu from standby mode.
Use this key to confirm selected items and perform selected operations.
6. **Video Call Key** : Make and answer video calls.
7. **Send Key** : Make and answer calls.
8. **Internal Camera Lens**: Used for video calls, etc.
9. **Charging Indicator**: Lights during charging and goes out when charging is complete.
10. **Right Soft Key** : Return to the previous operation, cancel operations, etc. You can also use this key to access Vodafone live! from standby mode.
11. **Media Player Key** : Start Media Player from standby mode.
12. **Clear/Memo Key** : Delete characters and return to the previous operation. You can also use this key to access Answerphone from standby mode.
13. **End/Power Key** : Power handset on/off, end calls/operations and return to standby mode.
14. **Keypad**: Enter phone numbers, characters, etc.
Press and hold  in standby mode to access Voicemail messages.
To enter " + " for making an international call, press and hold  from standby mode.
***/Key/** : Switch between uppercase and lowercase.
You can also use this key to scroll to the previous page in a menu list or turn the mobile light on or off during camera use.
To set/cancel the key guard, press and hold  from standby mode.
#/Key : Enter symbols, etc. You can also use this key to scroll to the next page in a menu list.
To set or cancel Silent, press and hold  from standby mode.
15. **Microphone**
16. **Cable and Handset Charging Connector**: Connect Rapid Charger and other devices.
17. **External Display**: Notices of incoming calls, received messages and other information while your handset is closed.
18. **Infrared Port**: Used for exchanging data by infrared.
19. **Mobile Light**: Used as a light when taking pictures or recording videos at night time or while indoors.
20. **Camera/Video Indicator**: Flashes when the camera or video is activated.
21. **Internal Antenna**: The antenna is built into your handset.
22. **Macro Switch**: Use to switch between standard mode and macro mode.
23. **External Camera Lens**: Used for taking pictures and recording videos.



24. IC Card: A Vodafone live! FeliCa IC Card is embedded. Place the  logo near a reader/writer.

25. Handstrap Hole

26. Side Key /Side Key : Used for moving cursor up and down and adjusting the volume. Press and hold  to use it as a shortcut key.

27. Earphone Microphone/AV OUT Jack: Connect the Stereo Handsfree Headset or video output cable.

28. Memory Card Slot


29. Side Key : Activate the camera, etc. This key also acts as the shutter button during camera use. Press and hold  while your handset is closed to set/cancel the Hold setting for the side keys.

30. Stereo Speakers

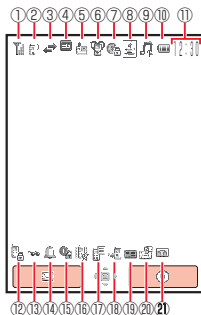
31. External Left Soft Key : Functions as Left Soft Key in turnover style. This key is only enabled in turnover style.

32. Microphone

33. External Navigation Key : Functions as Navigation Key in turnover style. This key is only enabled in turnover style.































External Centre Key : Functions as Centre Key in turnover style. This key is only enabled in turnover style.












34. External Right Soft Key : Functions as Right Soft Key in turnover style. This key is only enabled in turnover style.



Main Display Indicators

- ① **Signal Strength**
 Strong Moderate Weak Faint
Out of Range
Offline Mode On (page 256)
External Connection for Data Synchronisation
- ② **Voice/Video Call**
Dial-up Connection (pages 314, 318, 323)
Location Position
Quick Positioning Activated/Paused
- ③ **Packet Communication**
Displaying Picture File with Location Information
Packet Transmission Ready
Packet Network Range
- ④ **3G [UMTS] Network Connection/Roaming**
GSM Network Connection/Roaming
GPRS Network Connection/Roaming
Service Area of Operator Other than Vodafone
- ⑤ **Reception of High Priority MMS**
Reception of Rights Object
 Indicates the reception of a content key during operation.
New MMS/SMS (pages 158, 166)
New WAP Push Message (page 166)
New CAST (page 192)
- ⑥ **Silent** (page 236)
Car (page 236)
Meeting (page 236)

- ⑦  **Web SSL**
Indicates a connection to an information page with security protection.
-   **Bluetooth™ Connection Established/Connection Standby** (page 307)
-  **Bluetooth™ Connection Lost**
-  **Infrared Communication** (page 315)
- ⑧   **V-appli Activated/Paused** (page 188)
- ⑨  **Music File Playing**
-  **Music File Playback Paused**
-  **Video File Playing**
-  **Streaming** (page 104)
-  **Memory Card Inserted** (page 47)
- ⑩  **Battery Level**
- | | |
|--|--|
|  Sufficiently charged |  Very Low |
|  Moderate |  Charge Immediately |
|  Low | |
-  **Charging** (page 46)
- ⑪ **Time**
- ⑫  **Phone Lock Active** (page 269)
-  **Key Guard Active** (page 275)
- ⑬  **Secret Mode On** (page 273)
- ⑭  **Alarm Set** (page 287)
- ⑮  **IC Card Lock Active** (pages 215, 217)
- ⑯  **Silent and Vibration Set** (page 236)
-  **Silent Set** (page 236)
-  **Vibration Set** (page 236)
- ⑰  **Information Prompt** (page 39)
- ⑱  **Missed Call** (page 62)
- ⑲  **SMS maximum for incoming messages**
Indicates Received Msgs. contains the maximum number of SMS messages.

- ②①  **New Voicemail Message** (page 66)
-  **Call Diverting without Ringer Set for Voice Call** (pages 66, 68)
-  **Call Diverting without Ringer Set for Video Call** (page 68)
-  **Call Diverting without Ringer Set for Voice and Video Calls** (page 68)
- ②①  /  /  /  **Answerphone On and You Have a Message** (pages 59, 257)
-  /  /  **Answerphone Off and You Have a Message** (pages 59, 257)



























External Display Indicators




Allows you to confirm information when your handset is closed.

- ① **Signal Strength**
 - Strong
 - Moderate
 - Weak
 - Faint
- Out of Range**
- Offline Mode On** (page 256)
- External Connection for Data Synchronisation**
- ② **Packet Communication**
 - Location Position**
 - Quick Positioning Activated/Paused**
 - Packet Transmission Ready**
 - Packet Network Range**
- ③ **3G [UMTS] Network Connection/Roaming**
 - GSM Network Connection/Roaming**
 - GPRS Network Connection/Roaming**
 - Service Area of Operator Other than Vodafone**
- ④ **Missed Call** (page 62)
 - Reception of High Priority MMS**
 - Reception of Rights Object**

Indicates the reception of a content key during operation.
 - New MMS/SMS** (pages 158, 166)
 - New WAP Push Message** (page 166)
 - New CAST** (page 192)
 - Memory Card Inserted** (page 47)
- ⑤ **Silent** **Car** **Meeting**

- ⑥  **Web SSL**
Indicates a connection to an information page with security protection.
-  **Bluetooth™ Connection Established/Connection Standby** (page 307)
-  **Bluetooth™ Connection Lost**
-  **Infrared Communication** (page 315)
-  **Phone Lock Active** (page 269)
-  **Key Guard Active** (page 275)
-  **Hold Active** (page 276)
- ⑦  **V-appli Activated/Paused** (page 188)
-  **Alarm Set** (page 287)
- ⑧  **Music File Playing**
-  **Video File Playing**
-  **Streaming**
-  **Music File Playback Paused**
-  **New Voicemail Message** (page 66)
-  **Answerphone On and You Have a Message** (pages 59, 257)
-  **Answerphone Off and You Have a Message** (pages 59, 257)
- ⑨  **IC Card Lock Active** (pages 215, 217)
- ⑩  **Battery Level**
- | | |
|--|--|
|  Sufficiently charged |  Very Low |
|  Moderate |  Charge Immediately |
|  Low | |
-  **Charging** (page 46)
- ⑪ **Time**

Tip











To close the information prompt, press  (Back) or . To redisplay the information prompt later, press and hold .

Information Prompt

This feature notifies you of missed calls, unread messages or other unconfirmed information. If you have unconfirmed information, the information prompt appears in standby mode.

1. When the information prompt appears, select an item and press  (Select).

The information prompt contains the following items.

-  **Missed Calls:** Notifies of missed calls (page 62).
-  **New SMS:** Notifies of new SMS (page 166).
-  **New MMS:** Notifies of new MMS (page 158).
-  **New Push:** Notifies of new WAP Push message (page 166).
-  **New Reports:** Notifies of unread report messages (pages 163, 168).
-  **IC Card Request:** Notifies of an IC card request (page 218).
-  **New CAST Contents:** Notifies of new cast content (page 192).
-  **CAST Information:** Notifies of an information download failure (page 192).
-  **Voicemail:** Notifies of new messages at the Voicemail Centre (page 66).
-  **Stop Snooze:** Allows you to cancel snooze (page 288).

Opening & Closing Your Handset

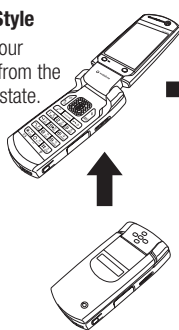
Note

- When rotating the display, hold the section above the display and do not force the display in the wrong direction. Doing so may damage your handset.
- Most descriptions in this manual are described in the open style.
- Do not carry your handset while it is in turnover style. Doing so may damage the main display.
- Do not close your handset while the display is only partially rotated. Doing so may damage the navigation key, etc.

You can use your handset in open style, turnover style and self-portrait style.

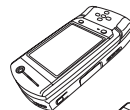
Open Style

Open your phone from the closed state.

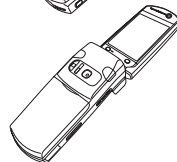


Turnover Style

Convenient for taking pictures and videos.



Rotate the display in the direction of the arrow.



Self-portrait Style

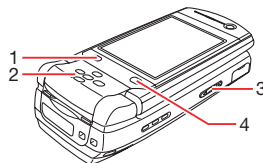
Convenient for taking pictures of yourself.

Note

The external soft keys and the external navigation key are enabled when your handset is in turnover style.

Operating Your Handset in Turnover Style

Use , , , ,  and  to access functions.



1. External Left Soft Key
2. External Navigation Key
3. Side Key
4. External Right Soft Key

- The functions assigned to the navigation key are also assigned to the external navigation key (page 253).

USIM Card

Before using your handset, be sure to do the following.

- ◆ Insert the USIM card in your handset.
- ◆ Insert the battery pack in your handset (page 45).

About the USIM Card

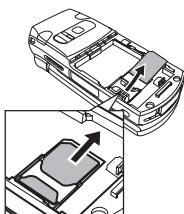
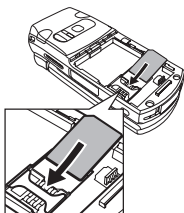
The USIM card contains customer information such as your phone number. Only insert the USIM card in a USIM card compatible handset. If the USIM card is not inserted, the handset cannot be used. Do not touch or damage the IC when handling the USIM card.

Inserting & Removing the USIM Card

Before inserting or removing the USIM card, remove the battery pack. For details on removing the battery pack, see page 45.

1. Open the battery cover and remove the battery pack.
2. Insert USIM card straight, making sure the IC portion is facing down (as shown in the illustration to the left).

To remove the USIM card, slide it out as shown on the left.



Personal Identification Number (PIN)

For security, the USIM card has two security codes: PIN 1 and PIN 2. Do not forget these codes and do not reveal them to others.

PIN1

This is a four to eight digit security code to prevent others from using your handset. The default setting is "9999."

PIN2

This is the four to eight digit security code required for operations such as resetting Call Costs and setting Fixed Dialling Numbers. The default setting is "9999."

PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) Codes

PUK codes are required to cancel PIN1 lock and PIN2 lock. PIN1/PIN2 lock is set when an incorrect PIN1 or PIN2 is entered three times consecutively. To obtain the PUK1/PUK2 code, contact Vodafone General Information (page 360). If the PUK1/PUK2 code is incorrectly entered ten times in a row, the USIM card is locked. There is no way to cancel the USIM card lock. Contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).


Note

- If you set the system mode to **UMTS Only** or **GSM Only**, you cannot make or receive any calls, including emergency calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard), when the selected network is unavailable. Functions that use a network connection are also unavailable. In such a case, change the setting for the system mode.
- During global roaming, use the phone numbers of the emergency services of the country you are in. Confirm the phone numbers beforehand. A connection cannot be guaranteed in every country and area because operation differs depending on the wireless network, wireless signal and function settings of your handset.
- If a video call is made to an emergency service, the call becomes a voice call.
- An emergency call cannot be made while you are performing data communication in an area with GSM coverage.

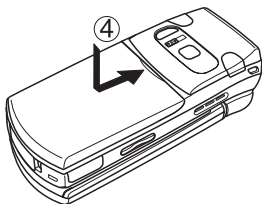
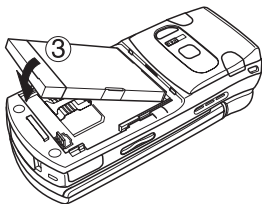
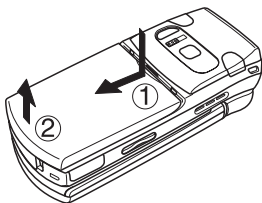
About Emergency Calls

You can still make calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard) when the following are set.

- Offline Mode (page 256).
- Phone Lock (page 269).
- Fixed Dialling Numbers (page 273).
- Call Barring (page 70).

If Key Guard is set (page 275), press and hold  to cancel the setting.

Battery Pack



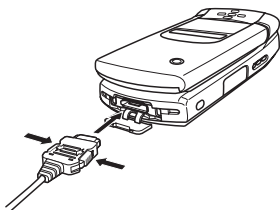
Before using your handset for the first time, charge the battery.

Inserting & Removing the Battery Pack

1. Press (portion indicated by ①) and slide battery cover.
2. Lift up battery cover.
3. Insert battery pack. Make sure to align bottom of the battery pack with the connector when inserting battery pack.

To remove the battery pack, insert a fingernail beneath the side or bottom tab and lift out the battery pack.

4. Place the battery cover on your handset and slide it until it clicks into place.



Note

- The rapid charger supports a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- The rapid charger plug is for use in Japan. To use the rapid charger in another country, purchase an appropriate adapter plug. Vodafone accepts no liability whatsoever for any problem resulting from charging overseas.

Charging the Battery Pack

The charging time is approximately 120 minutes.

1. Open the external connector cover of your handset and insert the connector of the rapid charger.

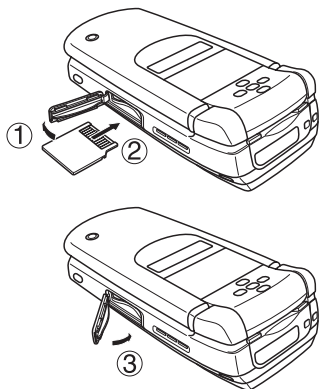
2. Insert the AC adapter plug into an AC outlet.

The charging indicator illuminates and charging begins.

3. After the charging indicator goes out, remove the AC adapter plug from the outlet.

4. Press release buttons (on both sides of the connector) to remove the connector from your handset.

Memory Cards



Note

- Do not use excessive force to open the memory card slot cover. Doing so may damage the cover.
- The memory card may pop out abruptly when removing it from your handset. Be cautious when ejecting the memory card.

About Memory Cards

You can save the pictures you take, videos you record and various downloaded files to a memory card.

- ◆ This manual refers to a miniSD™ memory card as a “memory card.”
- ◆ For details on saving files to a memory card, see the corresponding explanation for each function.
- ◆ Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 1GB (as of February 2006). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset because an operation check has not been performed for all memory cards.
- ◆ If a memory card is removed while reading or writing data, the data may be lost or the memory card may be damaged.





Inserting & Removing a Memory Card

1. Open the memory card slot cover.
2. Gently push a memory card into the slot until it clicks into position.
Gently push and release the memory card to eject it.
3. Close the memory card slot cover.

Turning Power On/Off

Note

The following screens appear the first time you turn on the power of your handset or after you clear the memory.

- Date&Time Settings (page 53).
- Retrieving Network Information (page 280) (appears when you press , ,  or  in standby mode).

Turning Power On

1. Press and hold .

If the PIN1 Code Request (page 267) is set to **On**, enter your PIN1 code.

Turning Power Off









1. In standby mode, press and hold .

System Mode Setting

You can set the network (telecommunications carrier) and system mode to use. You can also set the network connection information for using the Web and email.








Selecting the Network

You can set the network by selecting an available network in your current area automatically or selecting a network manually from a list.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Network Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Select Network** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Select Network** and press  (Select).
5. Select an item and press  (OK).
 - ◆ **Automatic:** Selects an available network automatically.
 - ◆ **Manual:** Select a network from the displayed list and connect to the network.
Available networks are indicated by the  or  indicator.




Adding a Network

You can add up to five new networks.

1. After Step 3 of “Selecting the Network” (page 49), select **Add New Network** and press  (Select).
2. Select **<Empty>** and press  (Options).
3. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
4. Select an item and press .
5. Enter the item and press .
6. Press  (Options) after the settings the items.
7. Select **Save** and press  (Select).






Preferred Setting

In the Preferred Network list, you can set the priority order for selecting networks.

1. After Step 3 of “Selecting the Network” (page 49), select **Set Preferred** and press  (Select).
2. Press  (Options).
3. Select an operation and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Add:** Allows you to select a network from the Network list and add it to the bottom of the Preferred Network list.
 - ◆ **Insert:** Allows you to select a network from the Network list and insert it in a specified place in the Preferred Network list.
 - ◆ **Move:** Allows you to select a network and change the order by moving the network in the list.
 - ◆ **Delete:** Deletes the selected network.

Setting the System Mode

You can set the handset to select the system mode from UMTS (3G) or GSM automatically or set the system mode fixed to UMTS or GSM. Setting **UMTS Only** when using your handset in Japan and **Dual** when using your handset overseas is recommended.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Network Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **System Mode** and press  (Select).
4. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Dual**: Selects the available system mode automatically.
 - ◆ **UMTS Only**: Sets the system mode to UMTS only.
 - ◆ **GSM Only**: Sets the system mode to GSM only.

Language Setting

You can change the language displayed on your handset.







1. In Standby mode, press , select **設定/Settings** and press  (選択/Select).
2. Select **一般設定/Phone Settings** and press  (選択/Select).
3. Select **Language/言語選択** and press  (選択/Select).
4. Select language and press  (選択/Select).
 - ◆ **自動選択/Automatic:** Select the language set for the language setting in the USIM card automatically.
 - ◆ **日本語 :** Sets the language to Japanese.
 - ◆ **English:** Sets the language to English.

Date & Time Settings

Tip

- You can enter a date from 2000/01/02 to 2099/12/30. Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- You can switch the clock display between the 12-hour and 24-hour system (page 248).








Setting the Date & Time

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Phone Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Date&Time** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Set Date/Time** and press  (Select).
5. Enter the year, month, day and time and press  (OK).

World Clock Setting



You can set or modify City 1 and City 2 displayed on the world clock, adjust the time difference and set summer time. For details on displaying the world clock, see page 297.

Setting City 1/City 2

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Phone Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **World Clock** and press  (Select).
4. Select **City 1** or **City 2** and press  (Select).
5. Use  to select a city and press .

The green longitude line on the map indicates the position of the city set for City 1.
The red longitude line indicates the position of the city set for City 2.

Tip






If the DST setting is set to **On**, the  indicator appears on the display when you set (page 54) or display (page 297) the world clock. The  indicator appears for the time displayed in standby mode.

Tip




To reset all city names, select **Reset City Name** after Step 1.

Setting the GMT Offset

You can select a city by entering a GMT time difference.

1. After Step 4 of "Setting City 1/City 2" (page 54), press  (Options).
2. Select **GMT Offset** and press  (Select).
To switch between + and -, press  (Options) and select **+/-**.
3. Use  to select the time difference and press  twice.



Setting the Daylight Saving Time (DST)

1. After Step 4 of "Setting City 1/City 2" (page 54), press  (Options).
2. Select **DST On/Off** and press  (Select).
3. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (OK).

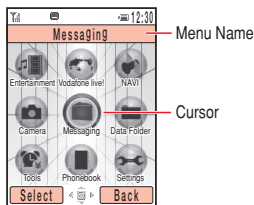
Editing City Names

1. After Step 4 of "Setting City 1/City 2" (page 54), press  (Options).
2. Select **Edit City Name** and press  (Select).
3. Enter a city name and press .

Switching the Main City

1. After Step 3 of "Setting City 1/City 2" (page 54), select **Set as Main City** and press  (Select).
2. Select **City 1** or **City 2** and press  (Select).










Accessing Functions



Main Menu Screen

Accessing a Function from the Main Menu

1. In standby mode, press  to display the Main menu.
2. Use  to select an icon and press  (Select).

-  **Entertainment:** Listen to music, play games and use cast.
-  **Vodafone live!:** Access the Vodafone live! menu and download pictures, melodies and applications (page 177).
-  **NAVI:** Check your current position, check the route to your destination, etc.
-  **Camera:** Take pictures and record videos (page 121).
-  **Messaging:** Create MMS/SMS messages. You can also check received and sent MMS/SMS messages (page 151).
-  **Data Folder:** Check the pictures you took, videos you recorded and other data stored in data folders (page 220).
-  **Tools:** Access preinstalled convenient functions (page 283).
-  **Phonebook:** Access and update the Contacts list (page 81).
-  **Settings:** Modify and confirm the settings of your handset (page 236).

Codes

Your security code, centre access code and call barring service code are required for using your handset.

Security Code

Your security code is “9999” or the four-digit number you selected when you concluded your contract. It is required to use functions and perform operations on your handset.

Centre Access Code


Your centre access code is the four-digit number you wrote on your application form when you concluded your contract. It is required to perform optional service operations from a fixed-line phone.

Call Barring Service Code

Your call barring service code is the four-digit number you selected when you concluded your contract. It is required to set call barring (page 70).

Making a Call

Tip

- In standby mode, enter a number and press  (Options) to perform the following:
 - **Voice Call:** Make a voice call.
 - **Video Call:** Make a video call (page 111).
 - **Save to Contacts:** Save the phone number to the Contacts list (page 82).
 - **Send Message:** Create an SMS/MMS message (pages 153, 164).
 - **Manual Hyphen:** Enter a "-".
 - **Pause:** Enter pause (P) for sending touch tones (page 304).
 - **International Call:** Adds the international code and country code (page 262).
 - **Hide My ID:** Hides your number from the other party (page 264).
 - **Show My ID:** Shows your number to the other party (page 264).
- You can also make a call from the Contacts list (page 90) or the call log (page 62).

1. Confirm that the power is on.

Confirm that the signal level is sufficient.

Touching the internal antenna part (page 32) of your handset affects signal strength. Avoid touching this part of your handset during use.

2. In standby mode, enter a phone number.

If you enter the wrong number, press  (Clear) or  to delete the last number entered.

3. Press .

4. Press  to end the call.

To end the call in turnover style, press .

Making an International Call

1. In standby mode, press and hold .

+ appears.




2. Enter the country code, area code and other party's phone number.

If the other party's phone number begins with 0, omit the 0.


3. Press .

Answering a Call

Tip

- To adjust the ringtone volume while a call is being received, use  or the side keys (/).
- If you miss a call, the information prompt (page 39) appears.
- You can also use Open to Answer (page 266) or Any Key Answer (page 266) to answer a call.

Tip

- To answer a call while the answer message is playing or a caller's message is being recorded, press  (Answer).
- For details on playing recording files, see page 258.

When a call is received, the ringtone plays and the external light flashes. If the phone number is in the Contacts list (page 90), the name and phone number of the caller appear on the display.

1. Press  when a call is received.

2. Press  to end the call.

To end the call in turnover style, press .

Placing an Incoming Call on Hold

You can place an incoming call on hold when you are unable to answer it right away.


1. Press  (Hold) when a call is received.

2. Press  (Unhold) to answer the call.

3. Press  to end the call.

Recording a Message with the Answerphone

You can record a caller's message when you are unable to answer a voice call. The Answerphone can save up to three messages and each message can be up to 15 seconds long.

1. Press and hold  when a call is received.

Rejecting a Call

You can manually reject an incoming call. To automatically reject calls from specific phone numbers, add the phone numbers to the Rejection list (page 271).

1. Press  when a call is received.

Engaged Call Operations

Tip



In areas with 3G-network coverage (UMTS areas), you can receive voice calls during Web browsing and receive messages and other information during voice calls.

Options Available during a Call

Press  (Options) during a call to perform the following.

- ◆ **Hold:** Place the call on hold.
- ◆ **Mute My Voice:** Mute the outgoing sound.
- ◆ **Mute All:** Mute both the outgoing and incoming sound.
- ◆ **Contacts List:** Allows you to reference the Contacts list (page 90).
- ◆ **Call Log:** Allows you to access the call log (page 62).
- ◆ **Voice Record:** Record the other party's voice (page 61).
- ◆ **My Details:** Displays the owner information (page 98).
- ◆ **DTMF Off/On:** Disable or enable DTMF tones.

Tip

- To adjust the earpiece volume in standby mode, press and hold  or  and use  to adjust the volume.
- For handsfree calling, press  to switch sound from earpiece to speaker.

Note







Only the other party's voice is recorded. Your voice is not recorded.

Tip

For details on playing Voice Record recordings, see page 293.

Earpiece Volume

You can use the navigation key or side keys to adjust the earpiece volume (level 1 - 5).

1. Press  or a side key (/) during a call.
The current setting appears.
2. Use  or a side key (/) to adjust the earpiece volume.

Recording Other Party's Voice




Voice Record allows you to record the other party's voice during a call. The maximum length of one recording during a call is 60 seconds.

1. Press  (Options) during a call.
2. Select **Voice Record** and press  (Select).

After the maximum length of recording time elapses or the call ends, recording stops and the recording data is saved to the Recordings folder automatically.

Call Log

Tip

- Press  from standby mode to directly access Dialed Numbers.
- Press  from standby mode to directly access Received Calls.
- From Dialed Numbers, Missed Calls or Received Calls, press  (Options) to perform the following:

View: See call details.

Voice Call: Make a voice call.

Video Call: Make a video call (page 111).

Send Message: Creates an SMS/MMS message (pages 153, 164).

Save to Contacts: Save to Contacts list (page 82).

To Rejection List: Save to Rejection list (page 271).

Delete: Delete the entry.




International Call: Add the international code and country code (page 262).

Hide My ID: (page 264).

Show My ID: (page 264).

Viewing Dialed Numbers/Missed Calls/Received Calls

You can view the last 20 dialed numbers, missed calls and received calls.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Log** and press  (Select).




The Call Log screen appears.

3. Select **Dialed Numbers**, **Missed Calls** or **Received Calls** and press .

To switch from the Dialed No. screen to the Missed Calls screen or Received Calls screen, use .

Viewing Call Time

Viewing Last Call/All Calls

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Log** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Call Timers** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Last Call** or **All Calls** and press  (Select).

To reset the call time, select **Reset Timers**.





Note

The displayed call cost serves as a guide only and may differ from the actual call cost billed.

Viewing Call Costs

You can view the cost for the last call or the total costs for all calls. The data for the total costs is saved to the USIM card.

Viewing Last Call/All Calls

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Log** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Call Costs** and press  (Select).






The Call Costs list appears.

4. Select **Last Call** or **All Calls** and press  (Select).

To reset the call costs, select **Reset Costs**.



Setting the Currency

You can set the currency for call costs.

1. From the Call Costs list (above), select **Cost Unit** and press  (Select).
The currency and rate appear.
2. Press  (Change).
3. Enter your PIN2 code and press  (OK).
4. Enter a currency (three characters) and press .
5. Enter a rate and press  (OK).

Setting Call Cost Display






You can set whether to display the call cost after a call ends.

1. From the Call Costs list (page 64), select **Call Cost Display** and press  (Select).
2. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Viewing Data Transfer Volume

You can view the packet communication data volume for the last session or all sessions.

Viewing Last Data/All Data


1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Log** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Data Counter** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Last Data** or **All Data** and press  (Select).

To reset the data transfer volume, select **Reset Data Counts**.


Optional Services

For details on services, contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).


Voicemail

If you are unable to answer a call, because your handset is out of range or a call is in progress, the call can be diverted to the Voicemail Centre. The  indicator appears on the standby screen when you have a new message.




Tip

- To change the number for diverting calls to the Voicemail Centre or the number for accessing the Voicemail Centre to listen to voicemail, select **Voicemail Centre** after Step 4. However, do not change these numbers unless Vodafone informs you that they have been changed.
- To confirm the status of settings, select **Status** after Step 4 and press  (Request).

Activating Voicemail

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Voicemail** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Voicemail Settings** and press  (Select).


The Voicemail Settings screen appears.

5. Select **Registration** and press  (Select).
6. Select a diverting condition and press  (Request/Select).
 - ◆ **All Calls:** All calls are diverted. The ringer does not sound before forwarding the call.
 - ◆ **When Busy:** Press  (Divert) to divert an incoming call.
 - ◆ **Not Reachable:** Diverts a call when your handset is out of range or the power is off.
 - ◆ **No Answer:** Diverts a call if you do not answer it within the set time. Set the answer time.





- ◆ **All Conditional:** Diverts a call that meets all of the conditions on page 66 except All Calls. Set the answer time.

After a network connection is established, the settings complete screen appears.

Tip

You can also listen to your voicemail if you press and hold  in standby mode.

Listening to Your Voicemail

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Voicemail** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Call Voicemail** and press  (Call).



Follow the voice prompts of the Voicemail Centre.

Deactivating Voicemail

1. From the Voicemail Settings screen (page 66), select **Deactivate** and press  (Request).

After a network connection is established, the settings complete screen appears.








Tip






- To confirm the current setting of all Call Divert types, select **Status** after Step 3 and press  (Request).
- To confirm the current setting of a Call Divert type, select **Status** after Step 4 and press  (Request).

Call Diverting



Forward incoming calls to a preset phone number.

Activating Call Divert

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Call Diverting** and press  (Select).
4. Select the calls and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **All Services:** Set diverting condition for all call types.
 - ◆ **Voice Call:** Set diverting condition for voice calls.
 - ◆ **Video Call:** Set diverting condition for video calls.
5. Select a diverting condition and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **All Calls:** All calls are diverted to the preset number. The ringer does not sound before forwarding the call.
 - ◆ **When Busy:** Incoming call is diverted when you press  (Divert).
 - ◆ **No Answer:** Divert a call if you do not answer it within the set time. Set the answer time.
 - ◆ **Not Reachable:** Divert a call when your handset is out of range or the power is off.
 - ◆ **All Conditional:** Diverts a call that meets all of the above conditions except All Calls. Set the answer time.

6. Select an input method and press  (Select).
- ◆ **From Phonebook:** Allows you to select an entry from the Contacts list (page 90). Afterwards, press .
 - ◆ **Set Number:** Allows you to directly enter a phone number. Afterwards, press  (OK).
 - ◆ **From Call Log:** Allows you to select a phone number from the call log (page 62). Afterwards, press .
7. Press  (Set/Request).
- After a network connection is established, the settings complete screen appears.


Deactivating Call Divert

1. After Step 3 of “Activating Call Divert” (page 68), select **Deactivate All** and press  (Request).
- After a network connection is established, the settings complete screen appears and all call divert services are deactivated.
- To stop call divert services individually, select **Deactivate** after Step 4 of “Activating Call Divert” (page 68) and press  (Request).

Call Barring

This service allows you to restrict outgoing and incoming voice calls, video calls and SMS messages.




Tip

- You can still make calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard) when the call barring service is activated.
- To confirm the status of the setting, select **Status** after Step 3 and press  (Request).

Activating Call Barring

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Call Barring** and press  (Select).

The Call Barring settings screen appears.

4. Select **Activate** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Outgoing Calls** or **Incoming Calls** and press  (Select).
6. Select a barring condition and press  (Request).

◆ **All Calls:** Stops all outgoing and incoming calls.



◆ **International Calls:** Stops all outgoing and incoming international calls.

◆ **Except Local/Home:** Stops all outgoing international calls except to Japan (only for outgoing calls).

7. Enter your call barring service code (page 57).




After a network connection is established, the settings complete screen appears.

Deactivating Call Barring

1. From the Call Barring settings screen (page 70), select **Deactivate** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Outgoing Calls**, **Incoming Calls** or **All** and press  (Request).
3. Enter your call barring service code (page 57).

After a network connection is established, the settings complete screen appears.

Changing Your Call Barring Service Code

1. From the Call Barring settings screen (page 70), select **Change Password** and press  (Select).
2. Enter your current call barring service code (page 57).
3. Enter your new call barring service code and press  (OK).
4. Re-enter your new call barring service code for confirmation and press  (OK).

After a network connection is established, the settings complete screen appears.

Call Waiting

When you receive a call during a call, you can place the current call on hold and answer the incoming call. If the incoming call is from a caller whose phone number is in the Contacts list (page 90), the caller's name and phone number are displayed.

Tip

To confirm the current Call Waiting setting, select **Status** after Step 3 and press  (Request).

Activating Call Waiting



1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Call Waiting** and press  (Select).

The Call Waiting settings screen appears.

4. Select **Activate** and press  (Request).

After a network connection is established, the settings complete screen appears.

Using Call Waiting

1. The call waiting tone is heard during a call. The name and phone number of the caller appears on the display.
2. Press  (Options).
3. Select **Answer** and press  (Select).

The original caller is placed on hold and a connection is established with the second caller. Both names appear on the display.

4. Press  to switch between callers.

Deactivating Call Waiting

1. From the Call Waiting settings screen (page 72), select **Deactivate** and press  (Request).

After a network connection is established, the settings complete screen appears.

Note

The options that are available vary depending on the call status.

Multiparty Call

This service allows you to call other parties during a call and switch between the parties or talk to multiple parties simultaneously. Connect with up to five parties simultaneously. The phone numbers of all the parties appear on the display during the call. However, this service is unavailable for video calls.

1. Enter a phone number during a call and press .

The original party is placed on hold and you can talk to another party.

2. Press  (Options) to perform one of the following operations.

Swap: Allows you to change the party of a private call.

Multiparty: Allows you to perform the following operations.

- **Multiparty:** Allows you to talk to all parties simultaneously.
- **Private:** Allows you to talk to the selected party only (private call).
- **Hold:** Places the selected party on hold.
- **Hold All:** Places all the parties on hold.
- **End Call:** Ends the call with the selected party.
- **End All Calls:** Ends the call with all the parties.

Mute My Voice: Mutes the outgoing sound.

Mute All: Mutes all the outgoing and incoming sound.

Contacts List: Allows you to reference the Contacts list (page 90).

Call Log: Allows you to access the call log (page 62).

Voice Record: Records the other party's voice (page 61).

My Details: Displays the owner information (page 98).





DTMF Off/On: Allows you to disable or enable the sending of DTMF tones.

Text Entry

Tip

The input method used in procedures described in this manual is English Entry (T9).

Tip

- In T9 mode or Multi Tap mode:
 - Press and hold  to switch between T9 mode and Multi Tap mode.
 - Press  to switch between initial caps, lowercase, numeric input mode and uppercase.
 - Press  to enter a space.
 - Press and hold a digit key to enter a number.
- To enter +, press and hold  in a numeric input mode.




Text Entry Modes

Switching Input Methods

You can switch between Japanese entry mode and English entry (T9) mode.

1. In a text entry window, press  (Options).
2. Select **Japanese Entry** or **English Entry (T9)** and press  (Select).

Switching Text Entry Modes

1. In a text entry window, press  (Options).
2. Select **Input Method** and press  (Select).
3. Select a text entry mode and press  (Select).





T9 abc/T9 Abc/T9 ABC:Enter characters in T9 mode.

abc/Abc/ABC(Multi Tap mode):Enter roman letters using the keypad.

Symbols:Symbols input mode.

Numeric:Numeric input mode.

Tip

- To enter a symbol, press  and use  to select a symbol.
- To delete a character, press  (Clear) or .
- If the word you want to enter does not appear in the list of conversion predictions, the word will appear next time if you add it to the T9 dictionary (page 80).

Tip

- To enter a symbol, press .
- To delete a character, press  (Clear) or .






Tip

You can also enter a space from the symbol window.

Entering Characters in T9 Mode

In T9 mode, press a key once for each letter you want to enter. This feature displays word predictions while you enter characters.

Example: Entering "dog"

1. Press   .
2. Press  to display the next prediction.
3. Press  (Select) to confirm your selection.

Entering Characters in Multi Tap Mode




In Multi Tap mode, each press of a key cycles through the letters and symbols assigned to the key.

Example: Entering "dog"

1. Press  once,  three times and  once.

Entering Symbols & Pictographs

You can enter symbols and pictographs.

1. In a text entry window, press .
To enter a pictograph, press  again.
2. Select a character and press .



Note

Performing the Redo operation after the Undo operation takes you back to the state prior to performing the Undo operation.

Editing Text







Undo/Redo

During text input, you can undo and redo operations.

1. In a text entry window, enter characters.
2. Press  (Options), select **Undo/Redo** and press  (Select).





Copy/Cut

You can copy or cut a range of characters and store it in the clipboard. You can store up to 20 data items in the clipboard.

1. In a text entry window, press  (Options), select **Copy** or **Cut** and press  (Select).
2. Use  to move the cursor to the first character of the text range and press  (Start).
3. Use  to move the cursor to the last character of the text range and press  (End).








Paste

In a text entry window, you can paste characters stored in the clipboard.

1. In a text entry window, use  to position the cursor.
2. Press  (Options), select **Paste** and press  (Select).
3. Select the item from the clipboard and press .

Selecting Text Range

You can save selected characters to the Words list or Contacts list, or replace other characters with them. This operation is only possible when Japanese Entry (page 75) is set.

1. In a text entry window, press  (Options), select **Define Range** and press  (Select).
2. Use  to move the cursor to the beginning of the text range and press  (Start).
3. Use  to move the cursor to the end of the text range and press  (End).
4. Select the editing method for the selected text and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Save to Word List:** Saves the characters to the Words list.
 - ◆ **Save to Notepad:** Saves the characters to the notepad.
 - ◆ **Save to Contacts:** Saves the characters as a phone number or email address to the Contacts list.
 - ◆ **Convert:** Allows you to reconvert the characters to Kana or Chinese characters, double-byte characters, single-byte characters, upper-case letters or lower-case letters.
 - ◆ **Replace:** Replaces content in the clipboard with the characters.
 - ◆ **Delete:** Deletes the characters.

Insert

You can select information from notepad (page 295), Contacts list (page 90) or My Details (page 98) and insert it during text entry. You can also insert a signature in an MMS or SMS message.




1. In a text entry window, use  to position the cursor.
2. Press  (Options), select **Insert** and press  (Select).

3. Select an item and press  (Select).

- ◆ **Notepad:** Allows you to insert information saved to a notepad entry.
- ◆ **Signature:** Inserts MMS Signature (page 163) or SMS Signature (page 168).
- ◆ **Contact Details:** Allows you to insert information saved to a Contacts list entry.
- ◆ **My Details:** Allows you to insert information saved to My Details (page 98).
- ◆ **URL history:** Allows you to insert a recently entered URL.
- ◆ **Phone number:** Inserts your phone number.

Move Cursor



You can move the cursor to the beginning or end. This operation is only possible when Japanese Entry (page 75) is set.

1. In a text entry window, press , select **Move Cursor** and press  (Select).
2. Select **To End** or **To Top** and press  (Select).

Tip






To edit or delete Words list entries, press  in standby mode, select **Settings**, select **Phone Settings** and select **Words List**.

Tip

If  (Spell) appears for a word during character input in T9 mode, the word is not in the T9 dictionary. To add the word to the T9 dictionary, press  (Spell).




Customise

You can configure the settings for editing characters. This operation is only possible when Japanese Entry (page 75) is set.

1. In a text entry window, press  (Options), select **Customise** and press  (Select).
2. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Edit Word List:** Allows you to add an entry to the Words list. You can also reset the prediction function.
 - ◆ **Prediction:** Allows you to set whether to use the character conversion prediction function when entering characters in Kanji Conversion mode ().
 - ◆ **Input Method:** Allows you to switch to pager input.
 - ◆ **Font Size:** Allows you to change the font size.
 - ◆ **Line Feed:** Allows you to set whether to add and display a line feed at the  position.
 - ◆ **Keys to Convert:** Allows you to assign the navigation key operation method for selecting candidates in the prediction area.

Adding a Word to the T9 Dictionary

If a conversion doesn't appear in the conversion prediction list, add it to the T9 dictionary. The next time you enter text in T9 mode, the conversion will appear in the prediction list.

1. In a text enter window in T9 mode, press  (Options), select **Add to Dictionary** and press  (Select).
2. Enter the word and press  (OK).

When you enter a word, the mode switches automatically to Multi Tap.

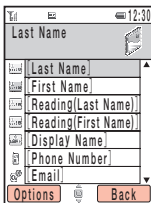
Phonebook



Phonebook Menu Screen

To display the Phonebook menu, press  in standby mode, select **Phonebook** and press  (Select). The Phonebook menu contains the following items.

- ◆ **Contacts List:** Displays the Contacts list.
- ◆ **Create Contact:** Allows you to add a new entry to the Contacts list.
- ◆ **Call Log:** Displays the Call Log screen (page 62).
- ◆ **Manage Category:** Displays the Category list for organising entries by category.
- ◆ **Manage Group:** Displays the Group list. Groups allow you to send the same message simultaneously to multiple addresses.
- ◆ **Send My vCard:** Converts the owner information to vCard format and sends it to an external device.
- ◆ **VF Address Book:** Use this service to backup and manage your Contacts list on Data Synchronisation Server (page 325).
- ◆ **My Details:** Displays the owner information and allows you to edit the information.
- ◆ **Settings:** Allows you to add an entry to the Speed Calling list, set the storage place of the Contacts list, set the scroll speed for the Contacts list screen and set Phonebook Lock.
- ◆ **Memory Status:** Displays the number of Contacts list entries in your handset, USIM card and memory card.



Create Contact Screen of the Handset's Contacts List

Note


- The entry cannot be saved unless information is entered in one of the following fields: Last Name, First Name, Phone Number or Email.
- When you save an entry to the USIM card, items are restricted. Both the first and last names are entered in the Name field.
- Picture, Sound/Secret, Location and Note cannot be set for the Contacts list of a memory card.

Adding an Entry to the Contacts List

You can save up to 500 Contacts list entries to your handset. You can also save Contacts list entries to the USIM card and a memory card. The maximum number of entries you can save depends on the size of entries and available space in the USIM card or memory card.

Adding an Entry from the Main Menu

Add new entries from the Create Contact screen. You can set just the required items and modify items or set additional items later.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Create Contact** and press  (Select).
3. Select an item and press .

The input screen for the selected item appears.

◆ Last Name

◆ First Name

◆ **Reading (Last Name):** Displays the reading of the last name automatically. You can edit the reading.

◆ **Reading (First Name):** Displays the reading of the first name automatically. You can edit the reading.

◆ **Display Name:** Displays the last name and first name you entered automatically. You can also edit the display name.

◆ **Phone Number:** Allows you to enter up to three phone numbers. You can enter up to 40 digits for each phone number.

◆ **Email:** Allows you to enter up to three email addresses.

◆ Postcode

Note

To save the entry, at least one of Last Name, First Name, Phone Number and Email needs to be set.

Tip

- You can also add a new entry if you press  (Options) from the Contacts list and select **Create Contact**.
- You can preset the default storage place for Contacts list entries. For details, see “Setting the Default Storage Place” (page 96).
- To clear an item you entered, select **Clear Field** after Step 5.

◆ Country

◆ State

◆ City

◆ Street Address

◆ **Add Info.:** Allows you to enter additional address information.

◆ **Job Title:** Allows you to enter a job title.

◆ **Company:** Allows you to enter a company name.

◆ Birthday

◆ **URL:** Allows you to enter a URL.




◆ **Category:** Allows you to set the category.

◆ **Picture:** Allows you to set a picture to appear on the display for an incoming call (page 84).



◆ **Sound/Secret:** Allows you to set the ringtone and other settings for incoming calls (page 85).

◆ **Location:** Allows you to set location information (page 86).

◆ **Note:** Allows you to enter a reminder.

4. Enter the item and press .
5. Press  (Options).
6. Select **Save** and press  (Select).

Adding an Entry from Standby Mode

1. In standby mode, enter a phone number and press .
2. Select **Add New Contact** and press  (Select).

To add the phone number to an existing Contacts list entry, select **Add to Existing**.

3. Proceed from Step 3 of “Adding an Entry from the Main Menu” (page 82).

Note







If a video file is set as the ringtone, the video is displayed for incoming calls and the picture set as the incoming picture is not displayed.

Tip

To reset the picture setting, select **Remove Picture** after Step 3.

Incoming Settings

Setting a Picture

1. In Step 3 of “Adding an Entry from the Main Menu” (page 82), select **Picture** and press .
2. Select **Take Picture** or **My Pictures** and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Take Picture:** Activates the camera for you to take a picture. For details on taking pictures, see page 125. After taking a picture, press .
 - ◆ **My Pictures:** Allows you to select a picture from Data Folder (page 220). To select a file, press . If the selected picture is too large, change the size.
3. Press  (Options).
4. Select **Save** and press  (Select).

To save the entry, at least one of Last Name, First Name, Phone Number and Email needs to be set (page 82).

Note







When the Mode Settings (page 236) is set to **Silent**, the ringtone does not play.

Tip

If you select **Same as Phone** in Step 2, the sound settings will be the same as the corresponding settings of "Mode Settings" (page 236). The external light setting will be the same as corresponding setting of "Setting the Incoming External Light" (page 255).






Setting the Ringtone & Other Settings

You can set the incoming external light, ringtone volume, ringtone pattern, vibration and secret setting individually for each Contacts list entry.

1. In Step 3 of "Adding an Entry from the Main Menu" (page 82), select **Sound/Secret** and press .
2. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **External Light:** Allows you to set the External Light colour for incoming calls. Select a colour and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Ringtone Volume:** Allows you to set the ringtone volume for incoming calls. Select a type, select **Set** and set the volume.
 - ◆ **Ringtones:** Allows you to set the ringtone pattern for incoming calls or the ringtone duration for incoming messages. Proceed from Step 4 of "Personalising the Ringtone" (page 238).
 - ◆ **Vibration:** Allows you to set the vibration for incoming calls. Select a type and select a vibration pattern.
 - ◆ **Secret Setting:** Allows the Contacts list entry to be displayed only if Secret mode (page 273) is set to **On**. Select either **On** or **Off**.
3. Press  (Back) once or twice to return to the Create Contact screen.
4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Save** and press  (Select).

To save the entry, at least one of Last Name, First Name, Phone Number and Email needs to be set (page 82).

Saving Location Information to the Contacts List Entry

1. In Step 3 of “Adding an Entry from the Main Menu” (page 82), select **No Location** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Register Location** and press  (Select).
3. Select the location information and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Start Positioning:** Retrieves the location information for your current position.
 - ◆ **From Location Log:** Select the location information from the location logs.
 - ◆ **From My Locations:** Select the location information from the My Locations list.
 - ◆ **From My Pictures:** Select a picture file with location information from Data Folder.
4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Save** and press  (Select).

To save the entry, at least one of Last Name, First Name, Phone Number and Email needs to be set (page 82).

Note

Preset categories cannot be renamed or deleted.

Tip

To reset or delete a category, select a category after Step 2, press  (Options) and select **Reset** or **Delete**.











Note

The sound settings for individual entries (page 85) take priority over the option settings for a category.


Editing Categories

Your handset already has the following categories: **Business Card**, **Private**, **Business**, **VIP**, **Colleague** and **Favourites**. In addition, you can set your own categories. You can edit and set the options of categories. For each category, you can set the incoming external light, ringtone volume, ringtone pattern and vibration.

Renaming a Category

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Manage Category** and press  (Select).
3. Select a category and press .
4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
6. Enter the category name and press .
7. Select an icon and press  (Select).
8. Press  (Options).
9. Select **Save** and press  (Select).













Setting Options for a Category

1. After Step 3 of “Renaming a Category” (above), select **Category Options** and press .
2. Proceed from Step 2 of “Setting the Ringtone & Other Settings” (page 85).
The category options do not include Secret Setting.




Setting Groups

You can set the groups to use for MMS addresses. There are five groups and you can add up to ten members to each group. For details on using the Group list, see “Creating & Sending an MMS Message” (page 153).

Adding a New Member to a Group

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Manage Group** and press  (Select).
3. Select a group and press .
4. Select **<Empty>** and press  (Options).
5. Select **Add** and press  (Select).
6. Select **Name** and press .
7. Enter a name and press .
8. Select **Send to** and press .
9. Enter a phone number or email address and press .
10. Press  (Options).
11. Select **Save** and press  (Select).

Adding a New Group Member from the Contacts List

1. After Step 4 of “Adding a New Member to a Group” (above), select **Get Contacts** and press  (Select).
2. Select a member and press .
The details of the selected member appear.
3. Select a phone number or email address and press .

Note

Contact list entries with Secret Setting (page 85) set to **On** cannot be selected.

Tip







You can perform the following operations after Step 1.

- **View:** Displays the details of the member.
- **Delete:** Deletes the selected member.




Tip

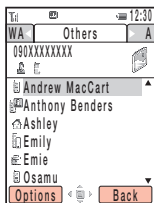
To reset a group, select **Reset** after Step 1.

Editing Group Members

1. After Step 3 of “Adding a New Member to a Group” (page 88), select a member and press  (Options).
2. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
3. Select an item and press .
4. Enter information and press .
5. Press  (Options).
6. Select **Save** and press  (Select).

Renaming a Group

1. After Step 2 of “Adding a New Member to a Group” (page 88), select a group and press  (Options).
2. Select **Rename** and press  (Select).
3. Enter the group name and press .



Contacts List Screen

Tip

- To display the Contacts list from standby mode, press .
- The selected search mode is used the next time you open the Contacts List.

Using the Contacts List

Searching for an Entry in the Contacts List

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press (Select).
2. Select **Contacts List** and press (Select).
3. Press (Options).
4. Select **Search Mode** and press (Select).
5. Select a search mode and press (Select).

◆ **List View:** Displays the Contacts list.

◆ **By 2-Touch:** Convenient for searching Japanese names in Japanese language mode. For details, refer to the Japanese user manual.

◆ **By Reading:** Allows you to search an entry from the Reading field. Enter a letter to search names beginning with that letter.

◆ **By Phone Number:** Enter a number and press . A list of entries with phone numbers containing the number you entered is displayed.


◆ **By Category:** Select a category and press . A list of only the entries registered to that category is displayed.

6. Select an entry and press to make a call to the default phone number.



Tip

To access the Web page, select the URL in the details screen of the entry, press  (Options) and select **Connect**.

Tip

If you selected an email address in Step 1, press  (Options) and select **Send MMS**.

Making a Call




1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Contacts List** and press  (Select).
3. Select a Contacts list entry and press .

The details screen of the entry appears.

4. Select a phone number and press .

To make a video call, press  (Options), select **Call** and select **Video Call**.



Sending a Message

1. After Step 3 of "Making a Call" (above), select a phone number and press  (Options).
2. Select **Send Message** and press  (Select).
3. Select a message type and press  (Select).

◆ **SMS:** Allows you to create an SMS message (page 164).

◆ **MMS:** Allows you to create an MMS message (page 153).

Using Location Information Saved to Contacts List Entry

1. After Step 3 of "Making a Call" (above), select **Location available** and press  (Options).
2. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **View:** Displays details on registered location information.
 - ◆ **Open Map:** Displays a map for the registered location information.
 - ◆ **NAVI:** Starts the navigation application.
 - ◆ **Location Mail:** Allows you to send an MMS message containing the registered location information.

- ◆ **To My Locations:** Save the registered location information to the My Locations list.
- ◆ **Edit:** Edit the entry.
- ◆ **Delete:** Delete the entry.


Using Speed Calling

In standby mode, you can make calls quickly and easily to phone numbers in the Speed Calling list. You can add up to nine phone numbers to the Speed Calling list.







Note

- Only Contacts list entries in your handset can be added to the Speed Calling list.
- Contact list entries with Secret Setting (page 85) set to **On** cannot be selected.

Tip

To delete an entry saved to the Speed Calling list, select the phone number after Step 3 and press  (Delete).


Adding a Phone Number to the Speed Calling List

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
 2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
 3. Select **Speed Calling** and press  (Select).
- The Speed Calling list appears.
4. Select **<Empty>** and press  (Add).
 5. Select a Contacts list entry and press .

Tip

- The speed calling number is indicated beside the entry in the Speed Calling list.
- If the Contacts list entry in the Speed Calling list contains more than one phone number, a call is made to the default phone number (page 94).

Using Speed Calling to Make Calls

1. In standby mode, enter a speed calling number.
2. Press .

Using Send My vCard

You can convert the owner information appearing in My Details to vObject format (page 227) and send it by infrared or Bluetooth™.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Send My vCard** and press  (Select).
3. Select a send method and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Infrared:** Sends the information by infrared (page 316).
 - ◆ **Bluetooth:** Sends the information by Bluetooth™ (page 311).










Tip

You can set the following options after Step 7. The available options vary depending on the item selected.

- **Edit:** Allows you to re-edit the currently selected item.
- **Select:** Allows you to select the category, ringtone and other options.
- **Change Picture:** Allows you to change the picture.
- **Change Type:** Allows you to change the phone number, email address, postal address and URL type.
- **Set to Default:** Sets the selected phone number to the default phone number.
- **Remove Picture:** Allows you to delete the picture.
- **Reset Settings:** Allows you to reset the ringtone and other settings.
- **Clear Field:** Deletes the selected item.
- **Clear Category:** Clears the category setting.

Editing Contacts List Entries


You can edit and delete entries in the Contacts list.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Contacts List** and press  (Select).
3. Select a Contacts list entry and press  (Options).
4. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
The edit screen appears.
5. Select an item and press .
6. Edit the item and press .
7. Press  (Options).
8. Select the save method and press  (Select).

◆ **Save:** Overwrites the original entry.

◆ **Save as New:** Saves the edited entry as a new entry.

Options Available from the Contacts List

You can perform the following operations if you press  (Options) from the Contacts list.






- ◆ **View:** Displays the details screen for selected entry.
- ◆ **Search Mode:** Select a search mode (page 90).
- ◆ **Create Contact:** Allows you to add a new entry to the Contacts list.
- ◆ **Edit:** Edit entries.
- ◆ **Delete:** Deletes one or all Contacts list entries.
- ◆ **Select Multi:** Select multiple entries to perform Delete, Copy, Move, Send vCard and View operations on multiple Contacts list entries.
- ◆ **Send vCard:** Send an entry in vCard format. You can select the send method.
- ◆ **Memory Card:** View Contacts list entries saved to a memory card.
- ◆ **Phone/USIM:** View Contacts list entries saved to the handset and USIM card.
- ◆ **Sort by:** Allows you to change the entry order by item. You can select a sort option from **Birthday** or **Reading**.

Setting the Contacts List

Setting the Default Storage Place






You can preset the default storage place for new Contacts list entries.

An indicator ( /  / ) at the top of the Contacts list screen (page 90) indicates the storage place of the Contacts list entry.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Default Storage** and press  (Select).
4. Select a default storage place and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Always Ask:** Asks you to select the storage place each time you save a new entry.
 - ◆ **Phone Memory:** Saves all new entries to the Contacts list of your handset.
 - ◆ **USIM:** Saves all new entries to the Contacts list of the USIM card.
 - ◆ **Memory Card:** Saves all new entries to the Contacts list of a memory card.

Setting the Scroll Speed

You can set the speed for scrolling up and down in the Contacts list.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Scroll Speed** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Fast** or **Slow** and press  (Select).






Note

If Phonebook Lock is set to **On**, speed calling cannot be used to make calls.

Tip

If Phonebook Lock is set to **On** and you want to use the Contacts list, enter your security code (page 57) to temporarily cancel the setting.

Prohibiting Use of the Contacts List

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Phonebook Lock** and press  (Select).
4. Select **On** and press  (Select).
5. Enter your security code (page 57).

Vodafone Address Book

Use this service to backup and manage your Contacts list on Data Synchronisation Server. For details on the Vodafone Address Book, see page 325.




Confirming the Memory Status

You can display the number of Contacts list entries in each of your handset, USIM card and memory card.



1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Memory Status** and press  (Select).

Owner Information

You can display and edit owner information such as the phone number and email address of your handset.



1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **My Details** and press  (Select).

The owner information appears.

3. Press  (Options).
4. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).

Perform Steps 3 and 4 of “Adding an Entry from the Main Menu” (page 82).

Tip

You can also display owner information if you press  in standby mode and then press .

Media Player

Media player enables playback and streaming of video/audio files. Media Player supports 3GPP, 3GPP2, MP3 and MP4 file format.







In this Chapter

- Media Player Menu
- Playback Screen of Media Player
- Playing Music & Videos
- Using Playlists
- Other Operations & Settings
- Music Player

Media Player Menu

Tip

The number appearing to the right of an item indicates the number of playlists or files for that item.

1. In standby mode, press .
The Media player menu appears.
2. Use  to select Music tab (), Video tab () or Streaming tab ().
3. Select an item and press  (Select).

Music tab ()

- ◆ **Download Music:** Starts the browser and connects to a download site.
- ◆ **Music Search:** Starts the browser and connects to a search site.
- ◆ **Playlists:** Allows you to create a playlist and play music files.
- ◆ **Beat Engine Box:** Access tracks transferred from a PC to a memory card. All music files transferred from a PC (page 320) using the music transfer software are stored here. The list displays tracks by artist or album, or all tracks at once.
- ◆ **My Sounds:** Access files in the Melody&Music folder of Data folder.
- ◆ **Recent:** Displays the 20 most recent tracks played by Media Player and Music Player (page 108).

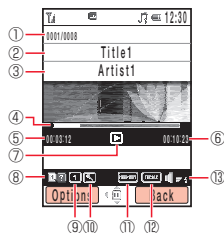
Video tab ()

- ◆ **Download Videos:** Starts the browser and connects to a download site.
- ◆ **My Videos:** Access files in the Videos folder of Data folder.
- ◆ **Recent:** Displays the 20 most recent video files played by Media Player.

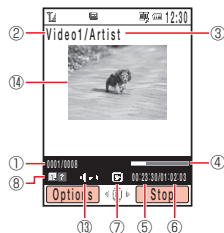
Streaming tab ()

- ◆ **Enter URL:** Allows you to connect to the network and play a streaming content.
- ◆ **Bookmarks:** Allows you to play streaming content from a bookmarked URL.
- ◆ **Recent:** Displays up to the last 20 URLs of streaming content played.

Playback Screen of Media Player



Music File Playback Screen



Video File Playback Screen

- ① File number/total number of files
- ② Title or file name
- ③ Artist name
- ④ Progress bar
- ⑤ Elapsed playback time
- ⑥ Total playback time
- ⑦ Playback status
- ⑧ Help guidance
- ⑨ Play mode
- ⑩ Voice Cancel
- ⑪ Surround
- ⑫ Equalizer
- ⑬ Playback volume
- ⑭ Video Display

Playing Music & Videos



Note

Music Player is not activated when playing a music file from Recent.

Tip




To start the browser and connect to a file download site, select **Download Music**, **Music Search** or **Download Videos** in Step 2.

Tip

When  appears in the playback screen, press  to display the operation guide.

1. In standby mode, press .

The Media Player menu appears.

2. Use  to switch to the Music tab or Video tab, select **Playlists**, **Beat Engine Box**, **My Sounds**, **My Videos** or **Recent** and press  (Select).
3. Select a playlist or a file within a folder and press .

Playback begins.

To use Music Player (page 108), close the handset while playing music files.



Operations During Playback

Adjust volume: Press  or .

Pause/resume: Press .

Rewind/Forward: Press and hold  or .


Play previous/next file: Press  or  or  or .






Rewind/Forward video frame by frame (only when an MP4 video is paused): Press  or .

Note

This operation is not possible for the playback of tracks from Recent.

Switching Play Modes


You can switch to any of the following play modes if you press  (Options) while a track is playing/paused and select **Play Mode**.

- ◆ **Repeat** (): Plays the current track repeatedly.
- ◆ **Repeat All** (): Plays all files in the current playlist or folder repeatedly.
- ◆ **Random** (): Plays all files in the current playlist or folder randomly.
- ◆ **Current Only** (): Plays the current track once only.
- ◆ **All** (): Plays all files in the current playlist or folder in order.

Setting the Surround

You can set the surround to expand the spatial imaging of playback. Press  (Options) while a track is playing/paused, select **Surround** and select a setting according to your preferences.

Setting the Equalizer

You can set the equalizer to boost certain frequencies of playback. Press  (Options) while a track is playing/paused, select **Equalizer** and select a setting according to your preferences.

Setting the Voice Cancel

You can set Voice Cancel to **On** to reduce the vocal level of playback. Press  (Options) while a track is playing/paused, select **Voice Cancel** and select **On** or **Off**.

Note

- If Voice Cancel is set to **On** for a monaural audio file, playback will no longer be able to be heard.
- Voice Cancel cannot be set at the same time as Surround or Equalizer.



Note


This operation is not possible for the playback of tracks from Recent.

Note

Packet communication fees apply even if playback is paused because the handset continues network communication.

Switching to Background Playback

You can switch to background playback in order to use other functions if you press  while a track is playing/paused. The  indicator appears on the display during background playback.

To redisplay the playback screen, display the standby screen during background playback and press .

Streaming

The streaming function allows you to play the video/audio files of links. You can access Web pages for streaming from **Enter URL** (page 100) on the Streaming tab or stream from links in messages and Web pages.










Using Playlists

Creating a Playlist



You can create up to ten playlists in your handset. You can also create up to ten playlists in a memory card. Each playlist can contain up to 50 tracks. This feature allows you to create a list of files that you want to play as a set. You can also change the playback order of files in a playlist.

1. In standby mode, press .

The Media Player menu appears.














2. Use  to switch to the Music tab.
3. Select **Playlists** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Create Playlist** and press  (Select).
6. Enter a playlist name and press .
7. Select **Beat Engine Box**, **My Sounds** or **Recent** and press  (Select).
8. Select a track and press 
A check mark is added to the check box.
To add another file, repeat Step 8.
9. Press  (Options).
10. Select **Add to Playlist** and press  (Select).

Tip

- To rename a playlist, select the playlist, press  (Options) and select **Rename**.
- After Step 2, to check the details of a track, select the track, press  (Options) and select **Details**.

Editing a Playlist

You can add new tracks to a playlist you have already created, as well as change the playback order and delete tracks.


1. After Step 4 of “Creating a Playlist” (page 105), select a playlist and press  (Options).
2. Select **Open** and press  (Select).
The tracks in the playlist appear.
3. Press  (Options).
4. Select **Manage Playlist** and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Add Tracks:** After you select the tracks to add, press  (Options) and select **Add to Playlist**. To select or unselect tracks, select a track with the cursor and press  or press  (Options) and select **Mark/Unmark** or **Mark All/Unmark All**.
 - ◆ **Remove Tracks:** After you select the tracks to remove, press  (Options) and select **Delete**. To select or unselect tracks, select a track with the cursor and press  or press  (Options) and select **Mark/Unmark** or **Mark All/Unmark All**.
 - ◆ **Change Order:** Select a track and press . Use  to select the position to which to move the track and press .

Using My Favourites


My Favourites is a preinstalled playlist. To add a track, press and hold  during playback. You can also save the contents of My Favourites as a regular playlist if you select **My Favourites** after selecting **Phone Memory** in Step 4 of “Creating a Playlist” (page 105), press  (Options) and select **Save as**. However, doing so will delete the tracks from My Favourites.

Other Operations & Settings


Other Operations

You can perform various operations such as sending a file or setting the surround and equalizer if you press  (Options) while a playlist or file list is displayed or a file is playing/paused.

Media Player Settings

1. In standby mode, press .

The main menu appears.

2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).



3. Select **Media Player Set** and press  (Select).

◆ **Priority Setting:** If **Incoming Call** is set, playback pauses when a call is received and you are notified of the call. If **Playback** is set, playback is not paused when a call is received and you are notified of the call.

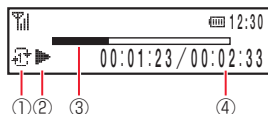
◆ **Backlight:** Allows you to set whether the backlight is lit during playback.

Music Player

Activating/Playing Music Player

If you close your handset while Media Player is playing a music file, Music Player automatically starts and playback continues. You can use  and  to control playback.


Playback Screen



Playback Screen

Note

- Music Player cannot be started if the battery level is low.
- Music Player cannot be started during playback initiated from Recent.

- ① Play mode
- ② Playback status
- ③ Progress bar
- ④ Title/file name, artist name, album name, file number/total number of files, playback time/total playback time (use  to switch items)

Operating During Playing

Adjust the playback volume: Press /.

Switch the playback screen: Press /.

Pause/resume playback: Press .

Rewind/Forward the track: Press and hold /.

Play the next track: Press .

Rewind the current track to the beginning/Play the previous track: Press .

End Music Player: Press and hold .

Video Call

A video call allows callers to see each other's face or image while they talk.

In This Chapter

- **About Video Calls**
- **Making a Video Call**
- **Answering a Video Call**
- **Convenient Functions for Video Calls**
- **Video Call Settings**

About Video Calls

Note

- A video call is only possible in areas with 3G-network coverage.
- The video call function of your handset complies with the 3G-324M international standard for 3G mobile videophones.



















Video Call Screen

A video call enables two parties with video call compatible handsets to send images to each other while they talk.


Indicators

The following indicators appear during video calls.

-  3G Area
-  Video Call
-  Mute
 -  Mute My Voice
 -  Mute All
-  Image Quality
 -  Motion Prioritised
 -  Standard Mode
 -  Macro Mode
-  Handsfree On
 -  Handsfree
 -  Handsfree (Bluetooth™ connection)
-  Image Transfer Off
-  Sending Picture
-  Voice Connection Established
-  Video Connection Established



Making a Video Call

Note


If a video call connection could not be established, a message appears and a warning tone plays. To make a voice call instead, press  (Yes).

Tip

You can also make a video call from the Contacts list (page 90) or call log (page 62).

1. In standby mode, confirm that the  indicator for indicating you are in an area with 3G-network coverage is displayed.
2. Enter a phone number and press .

When a connection is established, both you and the other party see each other's image and can begin talking. The sound automatically switches from the earpiece to the speaker.



When Appearance Check (page 119) is set to **On**, your image appears before the call is made. After you have checked the image, press  (OK).

3. Press  to end the call.

To end the call in turnover style, press .


Answering a Video Call

Tip

- To perform the following operations, use same procedures used for voice calls: Rejecting calls (pages 59, 270), diverting calls (page 68), Any Key Answer (page 266) and Open to Answer (page 266).
- To place an incoming call on hold, press  (Options) and select **Hold**. To answer a call placed on hold, press  (Unhold).

When a video call is received, the ringtone plays, the external light flashes and "Video Call" appears on the display.

1. Press  when a video call is received.

When a connection is established, both you and the other party see each other's image and can begin talking. The sound automatically switches from the earpiece to the speaker. However, if the phone profile (page 236) is set to Silent when a video call is received, the caller's voice is heard from the earpiece. To switch the sound from the earpiece to the speaker, press  during a call.

To answer the call as a voice call, press  during incoming video call. The substitute picture set in the Outgoing Video settings (page 117) is sent to the other party.

2. Press  to end the call.



To end the call in turnover style, press .

Convenient Functions for Video Calls

The following convenient functions are available during calls.

Placing a Call on Hold

You can place a call on hold. While on hold, voice guidance notifies the other party that he/she has been placed on hold. The other party is also sent the picture preset for the Hold Guidance setting (page 119).

1. Press  (Options) during a call.
2. Select **Hold** and press .



To resume a call placed on hold, press  (Unhold).

Adjusting the Speaker Volume

You can adjust the speaker volume during a call.

1. Press a side key (/) during a call.
2. Use  or side keys (/) to adjust the volume.

Turning On/Off the Outgoing Voice

You can turn on/off the outgoing voice during a call. To turn off the outgoing voice, press  during a call. To turn the outgoing voice back on, press  again.

Tip




If you have switched the sound to the earpiece (page 114), you can use this procedure to adjust the volume of the earpiece.

Tip





To cancel mute, press  (Unmute).

Setting Mute

You can mute the incoming voice and outgoing voice during a call.

1. Press  (Options) during a call.
2. Select **Mute** and press  (Select).
3. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Mute My Voice:** Mutes the outgoing voice.
 - ◆ **Mute All:** Mutes both the outgoing and incoming voice.

Switching between the Earpiece & Speaker

You can switch between the earpiece and speaker during a call. To switch between the earpiece and speaker, press  () or  () during a call.

Switching Cameras

You can switch between the external camera and internal camera during a call.

1. Press  (Options) during a call.
2. Select **External Camera** or **Internal Camera** and press  (Select).

Note





Zoom is unavailable while you are sending a picture (page 116).

Using Zoom


To use the zoom, press  during a call.

Switching Screen Display

You can select the screen display method during a call.









1. Press  (Options) during a call.
2. Select **Screen Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Switch Screens** and press  (Select).
4. Select a display method and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Priority Incoming:** Displays a large incoming image and a small outgoing image.
 - ◆ **Incoming Only:** Displays only the incoming image.
 - ◆ **Priority Outgoing:** Displays a small incoming image and a large outgoing image.
 - ◆ **Outgoing Only:** Displays only the outgoing image.

Outgoing Picture

You can change the picture being sent to the other party during a call. Pressing  switches between the camera image and preinstalled picture.

Sending a Picture





You can send a picture in Data Folder during a call.

1. Press  (Options) during a call.
2. Select **Screen Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Sending Picture** and press  (Select).
4. Select **My Pictures** and press  (Select).
5. Select a picture and press .
6. Use  to trim the picture and press .
7. Check the picture and press  (OK).

To cancel, press  (Stop).

Setting the Image Quality

You can set the quality and motion speed of the incoming video.









1. Press  (Options) during a call.
2. Select **Screen Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Image Quality** and press  (Select).
4. Select the output format and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Motion Prioritised:** Gives priority to video motion.
 - ◆ **Standard Mode:** Standard output format.
 - ◆ **Macro Mode:** Gives priority to image quality.

Video Call Settings

You can set various video call settings.

Setting the Outgoing Image


You can preset the outgoing image to send during a video call.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Video Call** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Outgoing Video** and press  (Select).
5. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Camera Monitored:** Sends video images recorded during a call.
 - ◆ **My Pictures:** Allows you to select a picture to send from the Pictures folder of Data Folder. Select a picture press  and then press  (Set).
 - ◆ **No Picture:** Sends a preinstalled picture in your handset.

Note


- The Auto Answer function for incoming video calls is only available while your handset is open. Incoming video calls are received as usual when your handset is closed.
- If a video call is received from a phone number in the Auto Answer list while Auto Answer is set to **On**, the Auto Answer tone plays and the call is answered automatically regardless of the mode settings (page 236).

Tip

To check, edit or delete the phone number, select the phone number and press  (Options) after Step 2.






Setting Auto Answer for Video Calls

When the Auto Answer function for video calls is set, video calls received from phone numbers in the Auto Answer list (below) are answered automatically without having to press a key.

1. After Step 3 of “Setting the Outgoing Image” (page 117), select **Auto Answer** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Mode Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Adding a Phone Number to the Auto Answer List for Video Calls

You can add up to ten phone numbers to the Auto Answer list. When a video call is received from a number saved in Auto Answer list, the call is automatically answered.

1. After Step 3 of “Setting the Outgoing Image” (page 117), select **Auto Answer** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Auto Answer List** and press  (Select).
3. Press  (Add).
4. Enter your security code (page 57).
5. Select a phone number input method and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **From Phonebook:** Allows you to select a phone number from the Contacts list (page 90).
 - ◆ **Set Number:** Allows you to directly enter a phone number.
 - ◆ **From Call Log:** Allows you to select a phone number from the call log (page 62).To add a second or subsequent phone number, press  (Options) after Step 2. Then, select **Add** and proceed from Step 4.






Setting the Backlight

You can set whether the backlight is lit during a video call.

1. After Step 3 of "Setting the Outgoing Image" (page 117), select **Backlight** and press  (Select).
2. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).



Hold Guidance Settings

You can set the picture displayed to the other party when you place an incoming video call or video call in progress on hold.

1. After Step 3 of "Setting the Outgoing Image" (page 117), select **Hold Guidance** and press  (Select).
2. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Hold Answer:** Allows you to set the hold guidance for incoming calls.
 - ◆ **Hold during Call:** Allows you to set the hold guidance for calls in progress.
3. Select an image type and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Preset Picture:** Allows you to set the default picture.
 - ◆ **My Pictures:** Allows you to select a picture from the Pictures folder of Data Folder. Select a picture press  and then press  (Set).

Setting Appearance Check

This feature allows you to check the image to send to the other party before making a video call.

1. After Step 3 of "Setting the Outgoing Image" (page 117), select **Appearance Check** and press  (Select).
2. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Camera/Video Camera

You can take pictures and record videos and then save them, attach them to messages and display them on a TV. You can also edit pictures.

In This Chapter

- **Camera**
- **Pictures**
- **Videos**
- **Picture & Video Settings**

You can use the camera to take pictures and record videos, as well as to scan QR codes (page 300).

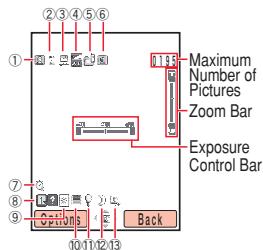
Modes

Modes for Taking Pictures

- ◆ **Digital Camera:** Allows you to take high-quality pictures at W640×H480 size or higher resolution.
- ◆ **Mobile Camera:** Allows you to take pictures at W240×H320 size or smaller for use as wallpaper, etc.
- ◆ **Scanner:** Allows you to scan QR codes. For details, see “Barcode” (page 300).

Modes for Recording Videos

- ◆ **Camcorder:** Records videos at W320×H240 size. Allows you to record videos up to 20 minutes long. The recording time depends on the amount of available memory in the storage place.
- ◆ **For MMS:** Records videos at W176×H144 size. Attach videos recorded in this mode to MMS messages.
- ◆ **Short Video:** Records videos at W128×H96 size. Use this mode for sending video attachments to MPEG-4 compatible Vodafone handsets (PDC).



Camera Finding Screen

Indicators

Camera Indicators

① Camera Mode/Multi Shots:

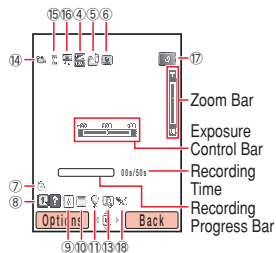
Digital Camera,
 Mobile Camera,
 Scanner,
 Internal Camera in Use,
 Multi Shots (High Speed),
 (Normal Speed),
 (Low Speed)

② Picture Size:

W2048 × H1536,
 W1600 × H1200,
 W1280 × H960,
 W640 × H480,
 W240 × H320,
 W144 × H176,
 W120 × H160,
 W112 × H112,
 W96 × H128

③ Picture Quality: Fine, Normal, Economy

⑫ Night Mode: On



Video Finding Screen

Video Camera Indicators

- ⑭ Video Mode: Video Mode, Internal Camera in Use
- ⑮ Video Size: W320 × H240, W176 × H144, W128 × H96
- ⑯ Video Quality: Fine, Normal, Economy
- ⑰ Status:
 - Standby, Recording, Stopped, Playing, Paused,
 - Forward, Rewind, Frame Forward, Frame Rewind
- ⑱ Voice Record Off

Camera & Video Camera Indicators




- ④ Exposure Control: -2.0 ... ±0 ... +2.0
- ⑤ Storage Place: Phone, Memory Card
- ⑥ Macro Mode
- ⑦ Delay Timer: 5 sec., 10 sec., 20 sec.
- ⑧ Guide Display
- ⑨ White Balance:
 - Daylight, Cloudy, Fluorescent (Day), Fluorescent (Wht),
 - Tungsten
- ⑩ Colour Control: Intense Colour, Soft Colour
- ⑪ Mobile Light
- ⑬ Self-view

Viewing Images on a Television

You can view pictures/videos on a TV. The TV systems supported by your handset are the NTSC and PAL systems. The SECAM system is not supported. For details, see "Displaying Files on a TV" (page 225).




Confirming the Memory Status

You can confirm the usage status of your handset and a memory card.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Camera** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Memory Status** and press  (Select).




Pictures

Tip

- If the Preview setting (page 147) is set to **On**, you can preview the image after it has been saved.
- If the picture was taken in Digital Camera mode, you can enlarge or reduce the captured image using .
- To capture another image, press  after capturing image.
- To set the Full Screen setting after capturing image, press  (Options) and select **Full Screen**.

Taking a Picture

There are two modes for taking pictures: Digital Camera and Mobile Camera (page 121). You can also edit the pictures you take and set them for Contacts list entries (page 136).



1. In standby mode, press the side key (.
2. Frame the subject and press  or a side key (.

The shutter clicks and the picture is saved automatically to the preset storage place (page 145).




The preview screen appears.

Deleting a Picture

You can delete the picture displayed after capturing image.




1. Press  (Delete) after capturing image.
2. Press  (Yes).

Send Functions

1. Press  (Options) after capturing image.
2. Select **Send** and press  (Select).
3. Select a send method and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **As MMS:** Allows you to send the picture attached to an MMS message (page 153).
 - ◆ **Via Infrared:** Allows you to send the picture by infrared (page 316).
 - ◆ **Via Bluetooth:** Allows you to send the picture by Bluetooth™ (page 311).







Send Function of Turnover Style

This send function enables you to send a picture you take or video you record in turnover style to the person set as the default recipient (page 163).

1. Take a picture or record a video in turnover style and press  (Options).
2. Select **Send** and press  (Select).
3. Select **As MMS** and press  (Select).

When sending a picture, select the attachment method.

Key Operations




You can adjust the exposure and zoom before capturing image. To adjust the exposure, press  to make the picture darker and press  to make the picture lighter. To adjust the zoom, press  or a side key () to zoom in and press  or a side key () to zoom out.

Picture Sizes

The picture sizes for Digital Camera mode and Mobile Camera mode are as follows. For details on setting the picture size, see “Changing the Picture Size” (page 141).




- ◆ **Digital Camera:** Allows you to select a picture size from W2048 × H1536, W1600 × H1200, W1280 × H960 and W640 × H480.
- ◆ **Mobile Camera:** Allows you to select a picture size from W240 × H320, W144 × H176, W120 × H160, W112 × H112 and W96 × H128.


Viewing a Picture

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image.
2. Select **My Pictures** and press  (Select).
3. Select a picture and press .

Adding Location Information to Pictures You Take

After you take a picture, you can add location information (page 198).

1. Press  (Options) after capturing image.
2. Select **Location** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Start Positioning** and press  (Select).

After your current position is located, the location information is added to the picture. The  indicator appears at the top of the display.

Tip

For details on changing the picture size in Digital Camera and Mobile Camera, see page 141.




Note

If multi shots is set, night mode is unavailable.

Functions for Taking Pictures




Switching Camera Modes

For details on camera modes, see "Modes for Taking Pictures" (page 121).

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image, select **Camera Mode** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Digital Camera**, **Mobile Camera** or **Scanner** and press  (Select).

Night Mode

You can use this mode for taking pictures at night, etc. You can set night mode to **On** to reduce noise while you are taking pictures.

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image, select **Night Mode** and press  (Select).
2. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Note

- Multi shots is unavailable for taking pictures in Digital Camera mode.
- Night mode (page 128) and zoom are unavailable while multi shots is set.




Note

When taking pictures in Digital Camera mode or at the W96 × H128 size, a frame cannot be set.

Multi Shots





You can take nine pictures in succession.

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image, select **Multi Shots** and press  (Select).
2. Select **High Speed**, **Normal Speed**, **Low Speed** or **Off** and press  (Select).





To delete a picture taken while multi shots is set, press  (Options), select **Delete**, select the picture, press  to add a check mark, press  (Options) and select **Delete**.

Frame Setting

You can select a frame before you take a picture. For details on setting a frame afterwards, see page 132.

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image, select **Add Frame** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Preset Frames**, **My Pictures** or **Off** and press  (Select).
3. Select a frame from the list and press .

The frame appears before capturing image.

Press  or  to display the previous frame and press  or  to display the next frame.

4. Press  (OK).


Additional Functions for Taking Pictures

- ◆ Macro Mode (page 144)
- ◆ Delay Timer (page 145)
- ◆ Mobile Light (page 145)
- ◆ White Balance (page 146)
- ◆ Colour Control (page 146)
- ◆ Exposure Control (page 147)

Editing a Picture

You can edit the picture after capturing image using Mobile Camera or pictures saved to Data Folder (page 220). You can edit any picture saved in JPEG or PNG format with a file size up to 100 KB and a picture size up to W240 × H320. Pictures taken in Digital Camera mode can only be saved as thumbnails.

Tip

You can perform the following operations if you press  (Options) after Step 3.

- **Cut:** Trims the image to fit the selected picture size.
- **Fit to Width:** Resizes the picture to fit the width of the selected picture size.
- **Fit to Length:** Resizes the picture to fit the height of the selected picture size.

Changing the Picture Size

You can change the sizes of the pictures you take.


1. Press  (Options) after capturing image, select **Edit Picture** and press  (Select).






For a picture saved to Data Folder (page 220), select **Advanced** and press  (Select).

2. Select **Picture Size** and press  (Select).

3. Select a picture size or **Define** and press  (Select).

A rectangle frame indicates the picture size.

If you selected **Define**, enter a picture size (W16 to 240 × H16 to 320) and press  (OK).

4. Use  to adjust the position of the picture within the dotted line and press .
5. Press  (OK) and .
6. Select a save method and press  (Select).

◆ **Save:** Overwrites the file of the original picture.

◆ **Save as:** Saves the picture as a new file. Enter a file name and press .

Adding a Frame

You can add frames to the pictures you take. You can select a frame from preinstalled frames or frames saved to Data Folder.

1. Press  (Options) after capturing image, select **Edit Picture** and press  (Select).
For a picture saved to Data Folder (page 220), select **Advanced** and press  (Select).


2. Select **Add Frame** and press  (Select).

3. Select **Preset Frames** or **My Pictures** and press  (Select).

If you selected **Preset Frames**, select a frame size and press  (Select).

4. Select a frame and press .

The framed picture appears.

If the frame size and picture size differ, you can use  to adjust the position of the frame.

To switch to another frame, press  or .



5. Press  (OK) and .

6. Select a save method and press  (Select).

◆ **Save:** Overwrites the file of the original picture.

◆ **Save as:** Saves the picture as a new file. Enter a file name and press .

Tip

- To paste the same stamp again, press  (Options) after Step 5 and select **Continue**.
- To undo the pasting of a stamp, press  (Options) after Step 5 and select **Undo All**.

Adding a Stamp

You can paste stamps on the pictures you take. You can select a stamp from preinstalled stamps or stamps saved to Data Folder.


1. Press  (Options) after capturing image, select **Edit Picture** and press  (Select).

For a picture saved to Data Folder (page 220), select **Advanced** and press  (Select).

2. Select **Add Stamp** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Preset Stamps** or **My Pictures** and press  (Select).

4. Select a stamp and press .

To switch to another stamp, press  or .

5. Use  to adjust the paste position and press .

6. Press  twice.

7. Select a save method and press  (Select).

◆ **Save:** Overwrites the file of the original picture.





◆ **Save as:** Saves the picture as a new file. Enter a file name and press .

Adding Text





You can add text to the pictures you take.

1. Press  (Options) after capturing image, select **Edit Picture** and press  (Select).

For a picture saved to Data Folder (page 220), select **Advanced** and press  (Select).

2. Select **Add Text** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Large Font**, **Standard Font** or **Small Font** and press  (Select).
4. Select a font colour and press  (Select).
5. Enter text and press .

You can enter up to 9 characters with the large font, 12 characters with the standard font and 20 characters with the small font.










6. Use  to adjust the paste position and press  (Paste).
7. Press .
8. Select a save method and press  (Select).

◆ **Save:** Overwrites the file of the original picture.

◆ **Save as:** Saves the picture as a new file. Enter a file name and press .

Rotating a Picture

You can rotate and then save the pictures you take.

1. Press  (Options) after capturing image, select **Edit Picture** and press  (Select).
For a picture saved to Data Folder (page 220), select **Advanced** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Rotate Image** and press  (Select).
3. Select an angle and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **90 degrees:** Rotates the picture 90 degrees clockwise.
 - ◆ **180 degrees:** Rotates the picture 180 degrees.
 - ◆ **270 degrees:** Rotates the picture 270 degrees clockwise (90 degrees anticlockwise).
4. Press  (OK) and .
5. Select a save method and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Save:** Overwrites the file of the original picture.
 - ◆ **Save as:** Saves the picture as a new file. Enter a file name and press .

Note

Some pictures may not be able to be saved as pictures that can be attached to messages.

Saving Thumbnails




Save pictures taken in Digital Camera mode as thumbnails. Pictures saved as thumbnails can be attached to messages.

1. Open a picture and press  (Options).
2. Select **Save Thumbnail** and press  (Select).

The thumbnail is saved automatically to the Pictures folder of Data Folder.

Saving to a Contact Entry

You can register a picture taken in Mobile Camera mode at the W112 × H112 size (pages 127, 141) to a Contacts list entry.

1. Take a picture at the W112 × H112 size, press  (Options) after capturing image, select **Assign to Contact** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Add New Contact** and press  (Select).

To add the picture to an existing Contacts list entry, select **Add to Existing**.

3. Proceed from Step 3 of “Adding an Entry from the Main Menu” (page 82).

Note




If the recording mode is set to For MMS or Short Video, recording cannot be paused.

Tip




- If the Preview setting (page 147) is set to **On**, the first frame of the video appears after recording a video.
- To record another video, press  after recording the first video.
- To set a video as the incoming ringtone (page 85), press  (Options) from the preview screen after recording ends and select **Assign to Contact**. Only videos recorded in For MMS and Short Video can be set as an incoming ringtone.



Recording a Video

You can use the camera to record videos. There are three modes for recording videos: Camcorder, For MMS and Short Video (page 121).

1. In standby mode, press and hold the side key (.
2. Display the subject and press  or a side key (.

The start sound is heard and recording begins.



In Camcorder mode, press  to pause recording and  or a side key () to resume recording.

3. Press  or a side key (.

The end sound is heard and the video is saved automatically to the preset storage place (page 145).

The preview screen appears.




Deleting a Video

1. Press  (Delete) after recording a video.
2. Press  (Yes).







Note

- Videos recorded in Camcorder cannot be sent.
- If the Preview setting (page 147) is set to **Off**, the video cannot be sent from the preview screen.

Send Functions

1. Press  (Options) after recording a video.
2. Select **Send** and press  (Select).
3. Select a send method and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **As MMS:** Allows you to send the video by attaching an MMS message (page 153).
 - ◆ **Via Infrared:** Allows you to send the video by infrared (page 316).
 - ◆ **Via Bluetooth:** Allows you to send the video by Bluetooth™ (page 311).

Key Operations

You can adjust the exposure before recording a video. You can adjust the zoom before or during recording. To adjust the exposure, press  to make the video darker and press  to make the video lighter. To adjust the zoom, press  or a side key () to zoom in and press  or a side key () to zoom out.





Video Sizes

- ◆ **Camcorder:** Records at the W320 × H240 video size.
- ◆ **For MMS:** Records at the W176 × H144 video size.
- ◆ **Short Video:** Records at the W128 × H96 video size.




Note



The forward, rewind, frame forward, frame rewind and slow playback features are unavailable for videos recorded in For MMS or Short Video.





Tip

To pause a video during playback, press . When a video is paused, press  for frame forward, press and hold  for slow playback and press  for frame rewind.

Playing a Video

1. Press  (Options) before recording a video.
2. Select **My Videos** and press  (Select).
3. Select a video and press .




Press and hold  to forward the video and press and hold  to rewind the video.

Press  or a side key () to increase the playback volume and press  or a side key () to decrease the playback volume.




Functions for Recording Videos

Switching Record Modes

For details on record modes, see “Modes for Recording Videos” (page 121).





1. Press  (Options) before recording a video, select **Record Mode** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Camcorder**, **For MMS** or **Short Video** and press  (Select).

Recording Sound

1. Press  (Options) before recording a video, select **Voice Record** and press  (Select).
2. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Setting the Video Compression Method

You can set the compression method for videos recorded in For MMS mode.

1. Press  (Options) before recording a video, select **Advanced** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Video Encode** and press  (Select).
3. Select **MPEG4(Japan)** or **H.263(Europe)** and press  (Select).

Additional Functions for Recording Videos





- ◆ Macro Mode (page 144)
- ◆ Delay Timer (page 145)
- ◆ Mobile Light (page 145)
- ◆ White Balance (page 146)
- ◆ Colour Control (page 146)
- ◆ Exposure Control (page 147)

Picture & Video Settings




Settings for Taking Pictures

Changing the Picture Quality

You can change the picture quality for camera modes.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Camera** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Camera Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Picture Settings** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Picture Quality** and press  (Select).
6. Select **Fine**, **Normal** or **Economy** and press  (Select).

Changing the Picture Size

1. After Step 4 of “Changing the Picture Quality” (above), select **Picture Size** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Digital Camera** or **Mobile Camera** and press  (Select).
3. Select a picture size and press  (Select).

For details on picture sizes, see page 127.

Note

When taking pictures in Digital Camera mode or at the W112 × H112 size, a date stamp cannot be added.

Note

The shutter sound is heard even if **Silent** is set for the Mode Settings (page 236). Furthermore, the volume of the shutter sound cannot be adjusted.




Date Stamp

You can add a date stamp to pictures.

1. After Step 4 of “Changing the Picture Quality” (page 141), select **Date Stamp** and press  (Select).
2. Select **On** and press  (Select).
3. Select a date colour and press  (Select).

Displaying a Grid

You can display horizontal and vertical gridlines on the monitor screen to use as a vertical and horizontal guide for taking pictures.

1. After Step 3 of “Changing the Picture Quality” (page 141), select **Screen Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Grid** and press  (Select).
3. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Shutter Sound

You can set the shutter sound.

1. After Step 3 of “Changing the Picture Quality” (page 141), select **Shutter Sound** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Pattern 1** or **Pattern 2** and press .

Note







The maximum recording time varies depending on the video quality setting.

Tip

To set the Full Screen setting after recording a video, press  (Options) and select **Full Screen**.




Settings for Recording Videos

Changing the Video Quality

1. In standby mode, press , select **Camera** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Video Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Movie Settings** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Video Quality** and press  (Select).
6. Select **Fine**, **Normal** or **Economy** and press  (Select).




Switching Image to Full Display

You can use the full display to view images.

1. After Step 3 of "Changing the Video Quality" (above), select **Screen Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Screen Display** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Normal** or **Full Screen** and press  (Select).

Display Indicators

You can set display indicators on or off.

1. After Step 3 of "Changing the Video Quality" (above), select **Screen Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Controller Display** and press  (Select).
3. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Note

The Start/End sounds are heard even if **Silent** is set for the Mode Settings (page 236). Furthermore, the volume of the Start/End sounds cannot be adjusted.


Start & End Sounds

You can set the start and end sounds.

1. After Step 3 of “Changing the Video Quality” (page 143), select **Start/End Sounds** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Pattern 1** or **Pattern 2** and press .

Settings for Pictures & Videos




Using Macro Mode

When the subject is close, slide the macro switch of the main camera (page 32) in the direction shown in the illustration below. When macro mode is set,  appears on the finder screen.



Self-view

This feature allows you to view yourself as if you were looking into a mirror while you capturing an image or record a video of yourself.

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image or recording a video, select **Self-view** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Internal Camera**, **External Camera** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Tip

If you switch to the internal camera, the picture size changes to W240×H320 and the recording mode changes to For MMS.

Note

All pictures taken in Digital Camera mode are saved to the Digital Camera folder.

Note

The exposure and zoom cannot be adjusted when the delay timer is activated.

Storage Place





You can set the storage places to which to automatically save pictures and videos.

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image or recording a video, select **Save Image to** or **Save Video to** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** and press  (Select).

If more than one folder is available for selection as the storage place, select a folder and press  (Select).





Delay Timer

This feature allows you to take a picture or start recording after a specified time elapses.

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image or recording a video, select **Advanced** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Delay Timer** and press  (Select).
3. Select **5 sec**, **10 sec**, **20 sec** or **Off** and press  (Select).





Mobile Light

You can turn on the mobile light while taking pictures or recording videos.

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image or recording a video, select **Advanced** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Mobile Light** and press  (Select).
3. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).





White Balance

Under some conditions, the colours in pictures and videos may differ from the actual colours. If so, you can set the white balance so that the colours more closely resemble the actual colours.

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image or recording a video, select **Advanced** and press  (Select).
2. Select **White Balance** and press  (Select).
3. Select a mode and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Auto**: Adjusts the white balance automatically in order to obtain natural colours.
 - ◆ **Daylight**: Suitable for outdoors under a clear sky.
 - ◆ **Cloudy**: Suitable for outdoors under a cloudy sky.
 - ◆ **Fluorescent (Day)**: Suitable for daylight fluorescent lighting.
 - ◆ **Fluorescent (Wht)**: Suitable for white fluorescent lighting.
 - ◆ **Tungsten**: Suitable for incandescent lighting.





Colour Control

You can adjust the colour tone.

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image or recording a video, select **Advanced** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Colour Control** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Neutral Colour**, **Intense Colour** or **Soft Colour** and press  (Select).








Exposure Control

You can adjust the brightness for pictures and videos.

1. Press  (Options) before capturing image or recording a video, select **Advanced** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Exposure Control** and press  (Select).
3. Use  to adjust the exposure.



Picture & Video Effects

You can take sepia tone and monochrome pictures.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Camera** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Camera Settings** or **Video Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Picture Settings** or **Movie Settings** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Picture Effects** or **Effects** and press  (Select).
6. Select **Sepia**, **Black&White** or **Off** and press  (Select).




Preview Setting

You can set whether to display the preview screen after you take a picture or record a video.

1. After Step 4 of "Picture & Video Effects" (above), select **Preview** and press  (Select).
2. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).



Flicker Adjustment

When taking pictures and recording videos near fluorescent lighting, you can reduce screen flicker by setting the frequency for the current area.

1. After Step 3 of "Picture & Video Effects" (page 147), select **Screen Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Flicker Adjustment** and press  (Select).
3. Select **50 Hz** or **60 Hz** and press  (Select).

Setting the File Name



You can preset the file name to use when saving pictures and videos to the date and time or a name of your choice.

1. After Step 3 of "Picture & Video Effects" (page 147), select **File Name** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Date&Time** or **Define** and press  (Select).













If you selected **Define**, enter a file name and press .

Setting Keypad Shortcuts

You can set whether to use the keypad shortcuts for accessing functions while you are using the camera.

1. After Step 3 of "Picture & Video Effects" (page 147), select **Keypad Shortcut** and press  (Select).
2. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

The following keypad shortcuts are available while you are taking pictures and recording videos.

	Taking Pictures	Recording Videos
	Key Guide	Key Guide
	Camera Mode	Record Mode
	Delay Timer	Delay Timer
	Picture Effects	Effects
	Picture Quality	Video Quality
	White Balance	White Balance
	-	Voice Record
	Night Mode	Screen Display
	Picture Size	-
	Colour Control	Colour Control
	Mobile Light	Mobile Light
	Self-view	Self-view

Messaging

Messaging allows you to send and receive text messages, pictures, sounds, vObjects and other data via the Vodafone live! Service Centre.

In This Chapter

- **Messaging Capabilities**
- **MMS**
- **SMS**
- **MMS/SMS Common Operations**

Messaging Capabilities

Note

The network service is only available while  or  appears on the display.




Note

- If ご希望のEメールアドレスは既に登録されています。他のアドレスを入力してください。
(The address has already been registered. Enter another address.) appears, repeat from Step 10.
- The above procedure may change without prior notice. For further information, contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).

Exchange text messages, pictures, sounds, vObjects, etc. with other handsets, PCs and other devices connected to the Internet. For details on the messaging service, contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).

Changing Your Mail Address

Change the account name (part before @) of your email address to help reduce spam. Random alphanumeric characters are set as the account name at the time of subscription.

1. In standby mode, press  ().
2. Select **My Vodafone** and press .
3. Select **各種変更手続き** and press .
4. Select **オシゲメール設定・各種メール設定** and press .
5. Select the centre access code input field and press .
6. Enter your centre access code and press .
7. Select **OK** and press .
8. Select **1. 各種メール設定** and press .
9. Select **1. メールアドレス編集** and press .
10. Select the character input field and press .
11. Enter an account name and press .
12. Select **OK** and press .

Tip

Alternatively, you can press  from standby mode and select **Messaging** to access the Message menu.

Message Menu

You can access the Message menu by pressing  () from standby mode.




- ◆ **Received Msgs.:** Received messages are saved here (pages 158, 166).
- ◆ **Create Message:** Allows you to create and send an MMS or SMS message (pages 153, 164).
- ◆ **Drafts:** Drafts are saved here (page 174).
- ◆ **Sent Messages:** Sent messages are saved here (pages 160, 167).
- ◆ **Unsent Messages:** Stores messages that could not be sent (page 175).
- ◆ **Server Mail Box:** Allows you to connect to the mail server and set various settings (page 161).
- ◆ **Templates:** You can use the preinstalled templates to create messages (pages 156, 165).
- ◆ **Settings:** Allows you to set various MMS and SMS settings (pages 162, 168, 169).

About MMS

The Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS) allows you to exchange multimedia messages containing data such as text, pictures, sounds, animations and video clips. For details on MMS, contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).

Creating & Sending an MMS Message

You can send a message up to 300 KB including the subject, body text and attachment files.




1. In standby mode, press , select **Create Message** and press  (Select).
2. Select **MMS** and press  (Select).

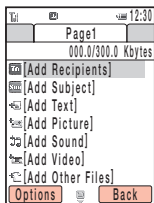
The Create MMS Message screen appears.

3. Select an item and press .

◆ **Add Subject:** Allows you to enter a subject.

◆ **Add Text:** Allows you to enter a message.

- To insert your current position or location information, press  (Options) during body text input and select **Insert Location**.
- To set the text colour and font size after text input, select the text in the Create MMS Message screen, press  (Options) and select **Text Options**.
- To see how the text looks with 3D Pictogram Display after text input, select the text in the Create MMS Message screen, press  (Options) and select **View as 3D Pict.**




Create MMS Message Screen





Note

Multiple files of the same type cannot be attached to one page. Also, some combinations of files may not be able to be attached to one page.

Tip

- Any message that could not be sent is saved to Unsent Messages.
- To play, edit and perform/set other options, from the Create MMS Message screen, select an item and press  (Options).

- ◆ **Add Picture:** Allows you to attach picture files. You can also activate the camera and take a picture to attach. To attach a preinstalled 2D, 3D or animated animal GIF file, selected **Animated Emoticon**.
- ◆ **Add Sound:** Allows you to attach sound files saved in Melody&Music.
- ◆ **Add Video:** Allows you to attach video files. You can also activate the camera and record a video to attach.
- ◆ **Add Other Files:** Allows you to attach files such as vCard files in Other Files.



4. Select **Add Recipients** and press .
5. Select **From Contacts**, **Enter Recipient** or **From Group List** and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **From Contacts:** Allows you to select an address from the Contacts list (page 90).
 - ◆ **Enter Recipient:** Allows you to enter an address using the keypad. You can enter up to 256 characters.
 - ◆ **From Group List:** Allows you to specify a group as the address from the Group list (page 88).
6. Set an address and press .
7. Select **Send MMS** and press .

The message is sent and then saved to Sent Messages.

Inserting Location Information in MMS Text


1. Press  (Options) from the MMS text input screen.

For details on the MMS body text input screen, see page 153.

2. Select **Insert Location** and press  (Select).
3. Select a location information and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Start Positioning:** Retrieve the location information for your current position.
 - ◆ **From Location Log:** Select the location information from the location logs.

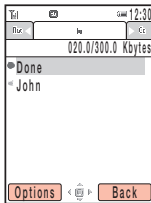
- ◆ **From My Locations:** Select the location information from the My Locations list.
- ◆ **From My Pictures:** Select a picture file with location information from Data Folder.
- ◆ **From Contacts:** Insert location information, saved in a Contacts list entry.
- ◆ **From My Details:** Insert the location information saved in My Details.

Recipient List Operations

From the Create MMS Message screen, select the address field and press  to display the Recipient list.

You can perform the following operations if you press  (Options) from the Recipient list.

- ◆ **Done:** Confirms the address and displays the Create MMS Message screen.
- ◆ **Edit Recipient:** Allows you to edit addresses.
- ◆ **Add Recipients:** Allows you to add addresses. You can enter up to 30 addresses for each of To, Cc and Bcc. However, a message can only be sent to up to 20 addresses.
- ◆ **Delete Recipient:** Allows you to delete addresses.
- ◆ **Save to Contacts:** Allows you to save an address to the Contacts list.
- ◆ **Set as To/Cc/Bcc:** Allows you to switch To/Cc/Bcc for an address.
- ◆ **Sending Options:** Allows you to set the following sending options: **Delivery Report**, **Delivery Time**, **Expiry Time** and **MMS Priority**. You can preset these settings in "Sending Settings" (page 163) of the MMS settings.




Recipient List Screen

Note

Some items do not appear depending on the position of the cursor.

Tip




- Press  (Options) in Step 3, to edit the template, etc.
- If preset templates have been deleted or edited, you can return them to their initial state by clearing the memory (page 277).

Tip

To set the **Page Duration** or **Background Colours** of the page, select **Page Options** after Step 1.

Using MMS Template



You can use MMS templates that have preset pictures and sounds to create messages. You can also edit MMS templates.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Templates** and press  (Select).
2. Select **MMS Templates** and press  (Select).
3. Select a template and press .

For details on the following procedure, see “Creating & Sending an MMS Message” (page 153).

Adding/Deleting Pages

You can add, delete and replace pages. Using multiple pages enables you to create a message that displays like a slide show. You can set up to 20 pages for each message.

1. From the Create MMS Message screen (page 153), press  (Options).
2. Select **Add Page** and press .

A page is added.

When there is more than one page, you can perform the following operations if you select **Page Control** in Step 2.







- ◆ **Add Page:** Adds a page.
- ◆ **Delete Page:** Deletes a page.
- ◆ **Previous Page/Next Page:** Takes you to the previous or next page.
- ◆ **Move Page:** Moves a page to a specified position.

Note

A start time and display duration that exceeds the **Page Duration** (page 156) cannot be set.

Setting the File Playback Time

You can set the playback time for the text and attached files.

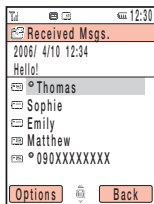
1. From the Create MMS Message screen (page 153), select text or an attached file and press  (Options).
2. Select **Item Duration** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Start Time** and press  (Select).
4. Enter the start time and press  (OK).
5. Select **Duration** and press  (Select).
6. Enter the display duration and press  (OK).

Note

Some files cannot be displayed/played unless the corresponding content key (content usage right) is downloaded.

Tip

To open the Received Msgs. list, select **New MMS** in the information prompt and press  (Select).



List Screen

Checking MMS Messages in Received Msgs.

When a message is received, animation plays while the ringtone is playing and your handset is vibrating. The  indicator appears at the top of the display.








Received messages are saved to Received Msgs..

For details on operations available from Received Msgs., see page 171.

1. In standby mode, press  (Select), select **Received Msgs.** and press  (Select).

The list appears.

The following indicators appear for MMS messages.

- appears for unread messages.
-  MMS message ( high priority level,  low priority level)
-  MMS notification ( high priority level,  low priority level)
-  Delivery report message

2. Select a message and press .


The message appears.

MMS messages with body text or only one page are displayed with 3D Pictogram Display in accordance with 3D Pict. Settings (page 169). If you receive an MMS message with multiple pages set, pictures, sounds and text are presented in a slideshow-like format. Whether an attached file displays/plays depends on the Auto-extract File setting of "Receiving Settings" (page 162). If there is an attached video or other file, the file icon is displayed.

Tip

To receive complete messages automatically, set Retrieve Mode (page 162) to **Immediate**.

Receiving Complete MMS Messages

When an MMS arrives, the first portion of the text message is received as a notification and the complete MMS is temporarily stored on the mail server (page 161). The  indicator appears when a notification arrives. Perform the following steps to retrieve the complete message.

1. Open notification message, select **<Retrieve MMS>** and press .

Using Location Information Attached to MMS Messages

1. Display a received message.

For details on received messages, see page 158.

2. Select a URL including location information and press .

3. Select an item and press  (Select).

◆ **Go to URL:** Displays a map from the location information.

◆ **NAVI:** Starts the navigation application.

◆ **To My Locations:** Allows you to save the location information to the My Locations list.



List Screen

Checking MMS Messages in Sent Messages

Sent messages are saved to Sent Messages of the mailbox.

For details on operations available from Sent Messages, see page 173.

1. In standby mode, press (MMS), select **Sent Messages** and press (Select).

The list appears.

The following indicators appear for MMS messages.





- MMS message (high priority level, low priority level)
- Delivered MMS message (high priority level, low priority level)
- MMS message for which delivery failed (high priority level, low priority level)

2. Select a message and press .

The message appears.






Using the Mail List

Incoming MMS messages with attached files or email messages from PCs or other devices are stored on the mail server. You can use the mail list to retrieve MMS messages and email messages.



1. In standby mode, press  (✉), select **Server Mail Box** and press  (Select).
2. Press  (Options).
3. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **View:** Allows you to check the contents of MMS notifications.
 - ◆ **Retrieve:** Retrieves MMS messages.
 - ◆ **Update Mail List:** Retrieves and updates the mail list.
 - ◆ **Delete:** Allows you to delete a message stored on the mail server.
 - ◆ **Select Multi:** Allows you to select multiple MMS notifications and delete or retrieve the messages.
 - ◆ **Forward:** Allows you to forward messages stored on the mail server.
 - ◆ **Server Mail Volume:** Allows you to check the usage rate on the mail server.
 - ◆ **Sort by:** Allows you to change the order of MMS notifications.
 - ◆ **Delete All:** Deletes all messages stored on the mail server.

MMS Settings

Receiving Settings







1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **MMS Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Receiving Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Retrieve Mode:** Allows you to set whether to automatically retrieve messages received by the mail server. There are two settings: **Home Network** and **Roaming Network**. For each of the settings, you can select **Immediate** or **Deferred**.
 - ◆ **Auto-extract File:** Allows you to set whether to automatically display/play picture and sound files attached to messages.
 - ◆ **Reply for Delivery:** Allows you to set whether to reply to requests for delivery confirmation.
 - ◆ **Anonymous Msg.:** Allows you to set whether to reject anonymous messages.

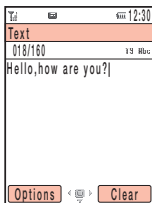
Sending Settings

1. After Step 2 of "Receiving Settings" (page 162), select **Sending Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Delivery Report:** Allows you to receive delivery reports to confirm whether sent messages were delivered to recipients.
 - ◆ **Delivery Time:** Allows you to specify a time for delivering messages from the service centre to recipients.
 - ◆ **Expiry Time:** Allows you to set the length of time a sent message is stored on the mail server.
 - ◆ **MMS Signature:** Allows you to save a signature and then set whether to display the signature.
 - ◆ **MMS Priority:** Allows you to set the message priority level to **High**, **Normal** or **Low**.

Setting the Default Recipient


Save an address in Default Recipient to capture and send an image from turnover style.

1. After Step 2 of "Receiving Settings" (page 162), select **Default Recipient** and press  (Select).
2. Press .
3. Select **From Contacts** or **Enter Recipient** and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **From Contacts:** Allows you to select an address from the Contacts list (page 90).
 - ◆ **Enter Recipient:** Allows you to enter an address using the keypad. You can enter up to 256 characters.
4. Set an address and press .
5. Press  (Options).
6. Select **Save** and press  (Select).



Create SMS Message Screen

Note

If you press  (Cancel) while an SMS message with multiple addresses set is being sent, the send operation is cancelled for the address set after the address to which the message is currently being sent.

Tip

Any message that could not be sent is saved to Unsent Messages (page 175).





About SMS

The Short Message Service (SMS) allows you to exchange text message with other handsets. For details on SMS, contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).

Creating & Sending an SMS Message

1. In standby mode, press  (Messaging), select **Create Message** and press  (Select).
2. Select **SMS** and press  (Select).


The Create Message screen appears.

3. Enter a message and press .
You can enter up to 160 characters.
4. Select **From Contacts** or **Enter Recipient** and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **From Contacts:** Allows you to select a phone number from the Contacts list (page 90).
 - ◆ **Enter Recipient:** Allows you to enter a phone number using the keypad. You can enter up to 20 digits.
5. Set a phone number and press .
The Recipient list appears.
6. Select **Send SMS** and press .
The message is sent and then saved to Sent Messages.

Note

Some items do not appear depending on the position of the cursor.


Recipient List Operations

You can perform the following operations if you press  (Options) from the Recipient list.

- ◆ **Send:** Allows you to send the message.
- ◆ **Edit Recipient:** Allows you to edit the address.
- ◆ **Delete Recipient:** Allows you to delete the address.
- ◆ **Add Recipient:** Allows you to add an address. You can enter up to ten addresses.
- ◆ **Edit Message:** Allows you to edit the message.
- ◆ **Save to Contacts:** Allows you to save an address to the Contacts list.
- ◆ **Save to Drafts:** Saves the message as a draft message to Drafts.
- ◆ **View as 3D Pict.:** Allows you to check how the text you entered looks with 3D Pictogram Display.
- ◆ **Sending Options:** Allows you to set the following sending options: **Delivery Report** and **Expiry Time**. You can preset these settings in "SMS Settings" (page 168).

Using SMS Template

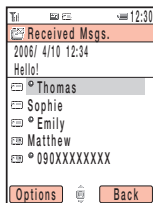
Templates allow you to enter messages easily.

1. In standby mode, press  () , select **Templates** and press  (Select).
2. Select **SMS Templates** and press  (Select).
3. Select a template and press .

For details on the following procedure, see "Creating & Sending an SMS Message" (page 164).


Tip

To open the Received Msgs. list, select **New SMS** in the information prompt and press  (Select).



List Screen

Checking SMS Messages in Received Msgs.

When a message is received, animation plays while the ringtone is playing and your handset is vibrating. If your handset is closed, the animation is displayed on the external display. The  indicator appears at the top of the display.





Received messages are saved to Received Msgs..

For details on operations available from Received Msgs., see page 171.

1. In standby mode, press  () , select **Received Msgs.** and press  (Select).

The list appears.


The following indicators appear for SMS messages.

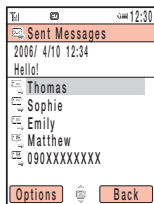
- appears for unread messages.
-  SMS Message
-  SMS message in the USIM card
-  Delivery report message
-  WAP Push message

2. Select a message and press .

The message appears.

Checking WAP Push Messages

A WAP Push message is a message delivered automatically from the service centre. Use the included links to access information. When you receive a message, the  indicator appears at the top of the display. If Auto Launch (page 184) of the browser settings is set to **On**, your handset accesses the specified URL as soon as the message is received. Some push messages are just saved to the Received Msgs..



List Screen

Checking SMS Messages in Sent Messages

Sent messages are saved to Sent Messages of the mailbox.

For details on operations available from Sent Messages, see page 173.

1. In standby mode, press  (SMS), select **Sent Messages** and press  (Select).

The list appears.

The following indicators appear for SMS messages.

 SMS message  SMS message in the USIM card





2. Select a message and press .

The message appears.

Note

Do not change the centre number for the Message Centre unless Vodafone informs you that it has been changed. Otherwise, you will no longer be able to use the service.

SMS Settings


1. In standby mode, press  (SMS), select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **SMS Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select an item and press .
 - ◆ **Delivery Report:** Allows you to receive delivery reports to confirm whether sent messages were delivered to recipients.
 - ◆ **Expiry Time:** Allows you to set an expiry time for messages.
 - ◆ **SMS Signature:** Allows you to save a signature and then set whether to display the signature.
 - ◆ **Message Centre:** Allows you to change the centre number for SMS. The centre number is saved to the USIM card.
 - ◆ **SMS Type:** Allows you to set the SMS type for outgoing messages to **Text**, **Email**, **Fax Group 3**, **Fax Group 4** or **Pager**.

MMS/SMS Common Operations

Note





- 3D Pictogram Display cannot display MMS messages with more than one page, SMS/MMS messages with no body text, MMS notifications, delivery reports and WAP push messages.
- Background playback of a music file may be paused if you use 3D Pictogram Display.

Tip

- You can display up to 150 characters regardless of whether the characters are single byte or double byte. "... " indicates the maximum number of characters has been exceeded.
- You can use  to change the display speed of 3D Pictogram Display while display is paused.

Setting 3D Pictogram Display

3D Pictogram Display is a 3D animation display function compatible with words, pictographs and emoticons in text. You can set the display conditions, background colour and display speed.





1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **3D Pict. Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select an item and press  (Select).

◆ **Auto Play:** Allows you to set the conditions for displaying received messages with 3D Pictogram Display. If **Unread Only** is set, only unread messages are displayed with 3D Pictogram Display.

◆ **Colour Settings:** Allows you to set the font and background colours for 3D Pictogram Display.

Common Settings


You can set various settings common to MMS and SMS.

1. In standby mode, press  (Messaging), select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Common Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Reply Settings:** Allows you to set whether to quote received messages when replying to them.
 - ◆ **Display Font Size:** Allows you to select a message font size from **Large**, **Standard** and **Small**.
 - ◆ **Page Scroll:** Allows you to select the scroll unit of the message display screen from **1 Line**, **Half Screen** and **Full Screen**.

Note

- Some items do not appear depending on the message type or screen.
- When Auto-delete is set to **On** and memory becomes full, the oldest MMS message is deleted when a new MMS message is received and the oldest SMS message is deleted when a new SMS message is received.
- When the memory for Drafts, Unsent Messages and Templates becomes full, a new message cannot be created regardless of the setting for Auto-delete.

Received Msgs. Operations

You can perform the following operations if you press  (Options) from the Received Msgs. list or a message.


- ◆ **View:** Allows you to check the contents of the message.
- ◆ **Retrieve:** Downloads the body text and attachment files of the MMS message (only for notification messages).
- ◆ **Play:** Plays the MMS message from the first page.
- ◆ **Reply:** Allows you to reply to the message.
- ◆ **View as 3D Pict.:** Allows you to view a message with 3D Pictogram Display.
- ◆ **Delete:** Deletes one message.
- ◆ **Save Sender:** Allows you to save the phone number of the sender to the Contacts list.
- ◆ **Select Multi:** Allows you to specify multiple messages and then retrieve or delete them. You can also switch between protected and unprotected or read and unread messages and move messages to another folder.
- ◆ **Forward:** Allows you to forward the message.
- ◆ **Call Sender:** Makes a call to the sender of the message.
- ◆ **Manage Folder:** Allows you to set Auto-delete and create folders. If a message in a folder is selected, you can delete or rename the folder and set automatic sorting.
- ◆ **Sort by:** Changes the order that messages appear. You can select a sort option from **Date from Latest**, **Date from Oldest**, **Sender**, **Unread to Read** and **Message Type**.
- ◆ **Delete All:** Deletes all messages in Received Msgs..
- ◆ **Extract:** Allows you to use a phone number, email address, URL or file (MMS message only) in the message.

- ◆ **View Item:** Allows you to view all files attached to the MMS message. You can also play, display and save files.
- ◆ **Save as Template:** Allows you to save the message as a template.
- ◆ **Copy Text:** Allows you specify a range of text in any part of the message and then copy the text.
- ◆ **Move to USIM/Phone:** Allows you to move the SMS message to your USIM card or handset.
- ◆ **Details:** Displays the message properties (time stamp, priority, address, size, etc.).
- ◆ **Load:** Starts the browser and displays the Web page (only for a WAP Push message).
- ◆ **View Original Msg.:** Displays the message for which delivery was confirmed (only for a delivery report).

Note

- Some items do not appear depending on the message type or screen.
- When Auto Delete is set to **Off** and memory becomes full, a warning message appears and new messages cannot be created. Delete messages you no longer require or set Auto Delete to **On**. However, MMS messages saved to a folder you created are not deleted.





Sent Messages Operations

You can perform the following operations if you press  (Options) from the Sent Messages list or a message.

- ◆ **View:** Allows you to check the contents of the message.
- ◆ **Play:** Plays the MMS message from the first page.
- ◆ **Resend:** Allows you to edit the message and then resend it.
- ◆ **View as 3D Pict.:** Allows you to view a message with 3D Pictogram Display.
- ◆ **Delete:** Deletes one message.
- ◆ **Select Multi:** Allows you to select multiple messages and then delete them or move them to another folder.
- ◆ **Forward:** Allows you to forward the message.
- ◆ **Extract:** Allows you to use a phone number, email address, URL or file (MMS message only) in the message.
- ◆ **Call Recipient:** Makes a call to the recipient of the message.
- ◆ **Manage Folder:** Allows you to set Auto Delete and create folders. If a message in a folder is selected, you can delete or rename the folder and set automatic sorting.
- ◆ **Sort by:** Changes the order that messages appear. You can select a sort option from **Date from Latest**, **Date from Oldest**, **Recipient** and **Message Type**.
- ◆ **Delete All:** Deletes all messages in Sent Messages.
- ◆ **View Item:** Allows you to view all files attached to the MMS message. You can also play, display and save files.
- ◆ **Save as Template:** Allows you to save the message as a template.
- ◆ **Copy Text:** Allows you specify a range of text in any part of the message and then copy the text.
- ◆ **Move to USIM/Phone:** Allows you to move the SMS message to your USIM card or handset.
- ◆ **Details:** Displays the message properties (time stamp, priority, address, size, etc.).





Drafts

You can save the messages you create to Drafts.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Drafts** and press  (Select).
2. Select a message and press  (Options).
3. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Edit:** Allows you to edit the message.
 - ◆ **Delete:** Allows you to select from **One**, **All** or **Select Multi** for deleting messages.
 - ◆ **Send:** Allows you to send the message.
 - ◆ **Call Recipient:** Makes a call to the recipient of the message.
 - ◆ **Sort by:** Changes the order that messages appear. You can select a sort option from **Date from Latest**, **Date from Oldest**, **Recipient** and **Message Type**.

Unsent Messages

Messages that could not be sent are saved to Unsent Messages.

1. In standby mode, press  (✉), select **Unsent Messages** and press  (Select).
2. Select a message and press  (Options).
3. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Edit:** Allows you to edit the message.
 - ◆ **Send:** Allows you to send the message.
 - ◆ **Delete:** Deletes the message.
 - ◆ **Select Multi:** Allows you to specify multiple messages and then send or delete them.
 - ◆ **Call Recipient:** Makes a call to the recipient of the message.
 - ◆ **Sort by:** Changes the order that messages appear. You can select a sort option from **Date from Latest**, **Date from Oldest**, **Recipient** and **Message Type**.
 - ◆ **Delete All:** Deletes all messages.

Vodafone live!

Vodafone live! is an online service that allows you to use the Internet to access various genres of content. You can browse information or download pictures, melodies and applications.

In This Chapter



- **Accessing Vodafone live!**
- **Bookmarks**
- **Operations for Web Pages**
- **Browser Settings**
- **V-appli**

Accessing Vodafone live!

Note

The network service is only available while  or  appears on the display.

Tip

- To display the Vodafone live! Web menu, press  () from standby mode.
- To switch to English, select **English** after Step 2.

You can access Vodafone live! to search for and obtain information.

A separate subscription is required to use the Vodafone live! service. For details, contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).

1. In standby mode, press , select **Vodafone live!** and press  (Select).

The Vodafone live! menu appears.

2. Select **Vodafone live!** and press  (Select).

The  indicator appears at the top of the display during communication.

3. Press  to end Vodafone live!.

Vodafone live! Menu

You can perform the following operations via the Vodafone live! menu.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Vodafone live!** and press  (Select).

The Vodafone live! menu appears.

2. Select an item and press  (Select).

- ◆ **Vodafone live!:** Displays the Vodafone live! Web menu.
- ◆ **Enter URL:** Allows you to access a Web page by directly entering the address.
- ◆ **Bookmarks:** Allows you to bookmark your favourite Web pages and access bookmarked Web pages (page 180).
- ◆ **History:** Displays the addresses of accessed Web pages in the order of newest to oldest.
- ◆ **Browser Settings:** Allows you to set various browser settings (page 184).

Key Assignments for Browsing the Web


The following shows the key assignments for browsing the Web.

: Selects an item or displays the Option menu.

: Takes you back to the previous screen.

: Selects an item.

: Scrolls up or down.


: Scrolls left or right.

: Ends communication. If your handset is not connected, takes you back to standby mode.

 to : Acts as a shortcut to a link with a number.

 and : Acts as a shortcut to a link with * or #. You can also use these keys to perform supported operations.








Side Key (): Increases the volume level.

Side Key (): Decreases the volume level. To set the volume to mute, press and hold the key.







Bookmarks

If you bookmark frequently accessed pages, you can access them quickly and easily.

Adding a Bookmark


1. Display a page and press  (Options).
2. Select **Bookmarks** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Add Bookmark** and press  (Select).
4. Select the title field and press .
5. Edit the title and press .
6. Press  (OK).
7. Select **Root Folder** and press  (OK).

Using Bookmarks

1. In standby mode, press , select **Vodafone live!** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Bookmarks** and press  (Select).
3. Select the title of the page and press  (Options).
To access the page of the selected title, press .
4. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Go to URL:** Allows you to enter a URL and display the Web page for the URL.
 - ◆ **Send:** Allows you to send the URL in an SMS or MMS message.
 - ◆ **New Entry:** Allows you to enter a new URL to add as a bookmark.
 - ◆ **Delete:** Allows you to select from **One** or **All** for deleting bookmarks.
 - ◆ **Move:** Allows you to move a bookmark to another folder.
 - ◆ **Select Multi:** Allows you to select multiple bookmarks and then delete or move them to another folder.
 - ◆ **Edit:** Allows you to edit a bookmark title or URL.
 - ◆ **Create Folder:** Allows you to create a folder.

Operations for Web Pages

You can perform various operations while a Web page is displayed.

You can perform the following operations if you press  (Options) while a Web page is displayed.





- ◆ **Select:** Selects the item at the cursor position.
- ◆ **Bookmarks:** Adds a bookmark for the displayed Web page or references existing bookmarks. You can also create a folder.
- ◆ **My Saved Pages:** Saves the displayed page to My Saved Pages.
- ◆ **To My Locations:** Allows you to save the displayed location information to My Locations.
- ◆ **Previous Page:** Takes you back to the previous page.
- ◆ **Next Page:** Takes you to the next page (if one exists in cache).
- ◆ **Go to URL:** Allows you to enter a URL or select information to display from access history.
- ◆ **Send Page:** Allows you to send the URL in an SMS or MMS message.
- ◆ **Reload Page:** Updates the information.
- ◆ **File Select Mode:** Selects a file in the information.
- ◆ **Other Settings:** Allows you to copy text and change the font size or encoding of information. You can also clear the cache and check server certificate details and page details.
- ◆ **Do Actions:** Allows you to perform the action specified in the displayed Web page.

Note

- Copy restrictions may prevent some files from being saved.
- Some downloaded files may not be able to be displayed/played properly.

Using Files in Web Pages

You can perform various operations such as saving and displaying/playing picture and animation files in Web pages.

1. Display a Web page containing a file and press  (Options).
2. Select **File Select Mode** and press  (Select).
3. Select a file and press  (Options).
4. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **File Details:** Allows you to confirm details such as the file name, file size, save permission and transfer permission.
 - ◆ **Save:** Saves the file to Data Folder.
 - ◆ **Play/View:** Plays or displays the file data.
 - ◆ **Paging Mode:** Takes you back to paging mode.
 - ◆ **Exit Browser:** Ends the browser.


Note

- Copy restrictions may prevent some files from being saved.
- Some downloaded files may not be able to be displayed/played properly.

Downloading Files from Links

You can download files from links and other objects in some Web pages.

1. Display a Web page, select a character string for which a link is set and press .

2. Press  (Yes).

Downloading begins.

3. Select an item and press  (Select).

◆ **Play:** Plays the file.

◆ **Save:** Saves the file to Data Folder.

◆ **File Details:** Allows you to confirm details such as the file name, file size and file type.

Saving the Location Information to My Locations

1. Display the location information screen and press  (Options).





2. Select **To My Locations** and press  (Select).

3. Select **Registration** and press  (Select).

4. Enter a title and press .

Browser Settings

You can set various browser settings.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Vodafone live!** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Browser Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Text Settings:** If you select **Text Browser**, you can set your handset to download only text information even when the download information contains images and sounds. If you select **Font Size**, you can change the font size of text in information.
 - ◆ **Memory Manager:** Clears the access history, Cookies, Web cache and DNS (Domain Name Server) cache. You can also enable or disable the storing of cookies.
 - ◆ **Manufacture No.:** Allows you to set whether to send automatically the International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) of your handset as your User ID when a request is received from the network.
 - ◆ **Certification:** Allows you to confirm details on a certificate issued from a certificate authority.
 - ◆ **Auto Launch:** Allows you to set whether to start the browser automatically when a WAP push message is received.
 - ◆ **Location Property:** Allows you to set whether to send location information automatically when a location request is received while downloading information.

From Web pages, you can download a variety of Java™ compatible applications such as games.





Applications

In addition to ordinary applications that run solely on your handset, some applications need to connect to the network (Web). Network V-appli enable you to play a game online or download information in real time.

Note

- When you use a network application, a communication fee is charged each time the application connects to the network. The communication fee is the same as that for using the Web.
- When offline mode is set (page 256), some network applications may not run properly.

V-appli Menu



1. In standby mode, press , select **Entertainment** and press  (Select).
2. Select **V-appli** and press  (Select).
3. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **V-appli Library:** Save applications downloaded from the Web and access preinstalled applications.
 - ◆ **Screensavers:** Stores standby mode applications downloaded from the Web. You can also set which application runs in standby mode or switch the standby setting on or off (page 188). To set the application start time or length of time the application runs before pausing, select **Set Time**.
 - ◆ **Settings:** Allows you to set various application settings (page 189).
 - ◆ **Java Information:** Displays an explanation on the Java™ licence.

Note


- If the battery level is low at the start of downloading, the application may not be completely downloaded. Charging the battery beforehand is recommended.
- If you replace the USIM card, downloaded applications will no longer be available.

Downloading V-appli

You can download applications. Before downloading an application, you can confirm details such as the download size and storage size.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Entertainment** and press  (Select).
2. Select **V-appli** and press  (Select).
3. Select **V-appli Library** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Download V-appli** and press .

A confirmation screen appears.

5. Press  (Yes).

An application download site appears.

6. Select an application and press .

The application details screen appears.

7. Press  (Downld.).

8. Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** and press  (Select).

Downloading begins.

9. Press  (Yes).





The V-appli Library appears.

Tip

To pause or return to the application, select **Pause** or **Resume** after pressing  in Step 5.

Starting V-appli



You can run one application in standby mode.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Entertainment** and press  (Select).
2. Select **V-appli** and press  (Select).
3. Select **V-appli Library** and press  (Select).
4. Select an application and press .



The  indicator appears at the top of the display and the application starts. If you close your handset, the application stops.

5. Press , select **Quit** in the confirmation screen that appears and press  (Select) to end the application.

Setting the Screensaver

1. In standby mode, press , select **Entertainment** and press  (Select).
2. Select **V-appli** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Screensavers** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Screensavers** and press  (Select).






To cancel the screensaver, select **Off**.

5. Select an application and press  (Select).
6. Press  (Yes).







Tip

- You can also change the volume level while an application is running. Press a side key (▲) to increase the volume level and press a side key (▼) to decrease the volume level.
- If the memory is cleared, any preinstalled applications that were deleted are reinstalled and returned to their initial state.

V-appli Settings

1. In standby mode, press , select **Entertainment** and press  (Select).
2. Select **V-appli** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Priority Settings:** Allows you to set the priority for when there is an incoming call, incoming message or alarm while an application is running. To give priority to voice calls, video calls, messages or alarms and pause the application, select **Voice Calls**, **Video Calls**, **Messages** or **Alarms**. To display a notification at the top of the display without pausing the application, select **Notification**.
 - ◆ **Backlight:** If you select **Backlight**, you can set the display lighting setting for when a V-appli is running. If you select **Blinking**, you can set whether to enable the preset backlight blinking operation of a V-appli.
 - ◆ **Volume:** Allows you to adjust the volume for when an application is running. You can also set the volume to mute.
 - ◆ **Vibration:** You can set the preset vibration of an application on or off.
 - ◆ **MemoryCard Sync.:** Allows you to update the V-appli information in a memory card.
 - ◆ **Reset Settings:** If you select **Master Reset**, you can reset all V-appli function settings. If you select **Clear Memory**, you can reset all V-appli function settings and delete all downloaded applications.

Managing V-appli

1. In standby mode, press , select **Entertainment** and press  (Select).
2. Select **V-appli** and press  (Select).
3. Select **V-appli Library** and press  (Select).
4. Select an application and press  (Options).
5. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Start:** Runs the application.
 - ◆ **Delete:** Deletes the application.
 - ◆ **Select Multi:** Allows you to select multiple applications and then delete them or move them to a memory card.
 - ◆ **Memory Card/Phone Memory:** Allows you to switch from the V-appli Library in your handset (Data Folder) to the V-appli Library in a memory card.
 - ◆ **Details:** Allows you to confirm details on the application.
 - ◆ **Security Settings:** Allows you to set the display method for the confirmation screen that appears when you attempt to use certain functions while an application is activated.

Vodafone live! CAST

Subscribe to services to automatically have information delivered regularly.

In This Chapter

- **Vodafone live! CAST**
- **Subscribing/Cancelling Subscription**
- **Checking Content Updates**
- **Downloading Content Manually**
- **Checking History**

Vodafone live! CAST

Subscribe to contents and receive automatic updates. Content updates are received during the night. When updates are received, Information Prompt appears and the following indicators appear:

 Downloading content

 New CAST content






 Download failed

- A monthly subscription fee is required to use this service. No additional fees required for receiving content.
- Vodafone live! CAST contents available only in Japanese (as of March, 2006).
- Vodafone live! CAST is only available in Japan.

Subscribing/Cancelling Subscription


Note





Communication fees apply while you are connected to the web.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Entertainment** and press  (Select).
2. Select **CAST** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Reg. /Cancel** and press  (Select).
A confirmation screen appears.
4. Press  (Yes).
Follow the onscreen instructions.

Checking Content Updates

Tip

- Your handset comes with one content information.
- To delete content, select the content after Step 3, press  (Options) and select **Delete**.


1. In standby mode, press , select **Entertainment** and press  (Select).
2. Select **CAST** and press  (Select).
3. Select **What's New?** and press .

Indicator Description:

 Unread

 Read

Checking Content from Information Prompt






1. When the information prompt appears, select **New CAST Contents** and press  (Select).

Downloading Content Manually

Note

- Past updates cannot be downloaded.
- Content cannot be downloaded on non-delivery days.



When an update cannot be received because your handset is turned off or the signal is weak, manually download the update. Only updates for that day can be downloaded.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Entertainment** and press  (Select).
2. Select **CAST** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Get Latest** and press  (Select).
4. Press  (Yes).

A confirmation screen appears.

A connection is established to the redelivery page.

Requesting Redelivery from Information Prompt


1. When the information prompt appears, select **CAST Information** and press  (Select).
2. Press  (Yes).

A confirmation screen appears.




A connection is established to the redelivery page.

Checking History

Note

- Up to seven items are saved to History. The oldest item is deleted automatically.
- Up to 3 MB of content can be saved. When either the maximum number of content items or the maximum content size is reached, the oldest item is deleted each time there is a new item.
- To delete past updates, select the item after Step 3, press  (Options) and select **Delete**.

Past updates are saved to History.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Entertainment** and press  (Select).
2. Select **CAST** and press  (Select).

Indicator Description:

 You have unread content

 You have read all content

3. Select **History** and press  (Select).

Indicator Description:

 Unread

 Read

4. Select content and press  (Select).

Vodafone live! NAVI

You can retrieve location information to check your current position and search for information about the location of your current position.

In This Chapter

- **Vodafone live! NAVI and Location Information**
- **Starting a Navigation Application**
- **Checking Your Current Position**
- **Using Location Logs**
- **Using My Locations**
- **Quick Positioning**
- **Settings**




Vodafone live! NAVI and Location Information

Note

- To locate your position accurately, you need to be outdoors and within a packet communication area.
- When signal reception of the GPS satellite is poor, your position can be determined by the base station information. However, depending on the base station's location or signal strength, the margin of error could vary from hundreds of metres to several kilometres in radius.
- Note that Vodafone accepts no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- If any of the following settings is set, positioning is unavailable.
 - Positioning Lock (page 206)
 - Offline Mode (page 256)
 - Fixed Dialling Number (page 273)
 - Location property (page 184) is set to **Do not Send**.

You can locate your current position, check it on a map, and send the location information by MMS.

NAVI Menu

1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).
2. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Locate Me:** Locate your current position (page 200).
 - ◆ **NAVI:** Starts the navigation application. An application must be set in Settings, prior to using this feature (page 199).
 - ◆ **Current position:** Send an MMS message containing location information for your current position (page 200).
 - ◆ **Location Logs:** Access the 20 most recently retrieved location information (page 201).
 - ◆ **My Locations:** Save location information (page 202).
 - ◆ **Quick Positioning:** To retrieve location information quickly, set your handset to maintain a network connection. Select a network connection time (page 204).
 - ◆ **Settings:** Set various location information settings (page 205).

Starting a Navigation Application

Note

- The preinstalled navigation application is only in Japanese.
- A navigation application cannot be started while another V-appli is paused.





You can use a navigation application to retrieve information about your current location or check the route to your destination.

1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).
2. Select **NAVI** and press  (Select).

Checking Your Current Position

Tip

Positioning accuracy is indicated in three levels. Level 3 is the most accurate. If accuracy is level 1, it is recommended that you move to a new location and try again.

1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Locate Me** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Send** or **Ask Once Only** and press  (Select).

Your handset connects to the Web and displays your current position.

Sending Current Position by MMS

1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Current position** and press  (Select).

When your current position is obtained, the Create MMS Message screen (page 153) appears and the information is automatically inserted in the MMS text field.

Using Location Logs



Note

When there are 20 location logs, the oldest log is deleted each time a new log is created.



Tip

The location log is not saved to memory if positioning is stopped partway through.

You can check location logs for up to the last 20 retrieved location information items.

1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).

2. Select **Location Logs** and press  (Select).

The  indicator appears if positioning was successful and the  indicator appears if positioning failed.

3. Select a log and press  (Options).

◆ **Open Map:** Accesses the Web for you to check a map.

◆ **NAVI:** Starts the navigation application.



◆ **Location Mail:** Send the location information by MMS.

◆ **To My Locations:** Saves the location information to My Locations.

◆ **Save to Contacts:** Saves location information to a Contacts list entry. To save the location information to an existing entry, select **Add to Existing**.

◆ **Delete:** Deletes the selected log.

◆ **Delete All:** Deletes all logs.








◆ **Select Multi:** Delete multiple logs. Select a log to delete and press  to add a check mark, then press  (Options) and select **Delete**.

◆ **View:** Displays the log details.





Using My Locations

Saving Location Information to My Locations

You can retrieve location information and save it to My Locations.

1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).
2. Select **My Locations** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Registration** and press  (Options).
4. Select **Register Location** and press  (Select).
5. Select the location information retrieval method and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Start Positioning:** Retrieves and saves the location information for your current position.
 - ◆ **From Location Log:** Allows you to select a location log and save the location information.
 - ◆ **From My Pictures:** Allows you to save the location information from a picture file with location information.
 - ◆ **From Contacts:** Allows you to save the location information from a Contacts list entry with registered location information.
 - ◆ **From My Details:** Saves the location information from My Details (page 98).
6. Enter a title and press .

Using My Locations


1. After Step 2 of "Saving Location Information to My Locations" (page 202), select a location and press  (Options).
2. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Open Map:** Accesses the Web for you to check a map.
 - ◆ **NAVI:** Starts the navigation application.
 - ◆ **Location Mail:** Allows you to send the location information by MMS.
 - ◆ **Save to Contacts:** Allows you to save location information to a Contacts list entry. To save the location information to an existing entry, select **Add to Existing**.
 - ◆ **Update Location:** Updates the location information.
 - ◆ **Delete:** Deletes the selected location.
 - ◆ **Delete All:** Deletes all locations.
 - ◆ **Select Multi:** Allows you to select multiple locations and delete them. Select a location to delete and press  to add a check mark, then press  (Options) and select **Delete**.
 - ◆ **Edit Title:** Allows you to edit the title of the location.
 - ◆ **View:** Displays the location details.


Quick Positioning

Note

Communication fees apply for using Quick Positioning because your handset connects to the Web during use.

Tip

The indicator changes to  (grey) when your handset is unable to retrieve location information because, for example, it is out of range.

In Quick Positioning, your handset maintains network connection, allowing quicker access to location information. The  indicator appears while you are using Quick Positioning.

1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Quick Positioning** and press  (Select).
3. Select a time or **Off** and press  (Select).

Note

The preset map URL cannot be edited or deleted.









Tip

To edit or delete a map URL, select it after Step 3, press  (Options) and select **Edit/Delete**.



Map URLs

Save up to five map provider URLs and preset a URL of your preference.

Saving a Map URL

1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **URL Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Select **<Empty>** and press  (Options).
5. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
6. Select **Display Name/URL** and press  (Select).
7. Enter a display name and URL and press .

Setting a Map URL



1. After Step 3 of “Saving a Map URL” (above), select the map URL to use and press  (Options).
2. Select **Set** and press  (Select).

Note

If you replace the USIM card, select the navigation application again.






Selecting the Navigation Application

You can select a navigation application.

1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **NAVI Application** and press  (Select).
4. Select a navigation application and press  (Select).

Positioning Lock

You can disable positioning.





1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Positioning Lock** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your security code (page 57).
5. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Note

This service is currently unavailable (as of March, 2006).

Privacy Settings






Block your handset from sending your current location to a positioning request made from a handset or PC.

1. In standby mode, press , select **NAVI** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Privacy Settings** and press  (Select).

For the following procedure, follow the onscreen instructions.

Location Information Send Setting

You can set whether location information is sent automatically when a location information request is received while you are obtaining information.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Vodafone live!** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Browser Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Location Property** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your security code (page 57).
5. Select **Ask every time, Send** or **Do not Send** and press  (Select).

Vodafone live! FeliCa

This chapter describes how to use Vodafone live! FeliCa and set the IC card lock.

In This Chapter

- Vodafone live! FeliCa
- Using Vodafone live! FeliCa
- Checking the IC Card Information
- Preventing Vodafone live! FeliCa Usage
- Interface Settings

Vodafone live! FeliCa

Note

IC Card stores data such as service and usage information. The procedure for deleting data in the IC Card varies depending on the IC-appli. For details, contact the Vodafone live! FeliCa provider.

Vodafone live! FeliCa is a service that incorporates contactless IC card technology. The 904T is a Vodafone live! FeliCa compatible handset. Use services such as e-money, membership cards, or reward point systems. Simply place the handset near a reader/writer. This feature is even available when your handset is turned off. However, it is not available when the battery pack is removed.

Basics

FeliCa

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology for reading and writing data in an IC card using a reader/writer.

IC Card

IC Card is a FeliCa chip embedded in FeliCa-compatible Vodafone handsets.

IC-appli

IC-appli is a type of V-appli required for using Vodafone live! FeliCa.

- Your handset is preinstalled with Edy e-money IC-appli. Edy is a brand name of the prepaid-type electronic money service managed by bitWallet, Inc.

Precautions for Using Vodafone live! FeliCa

- The data in the embedded IC Card may be used inappropriately if your FeliCa-compatible Vodafone handset is stolen or lost. Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any loss or damages resulting from the use of such data.
- Be sure to consult with the service provider about matters such as terms and conditions of use before using a Vodafone live! FeliCa-compatible service. Use of such services is at your own discretion.
- Communication fees may be charged for downloading an IC-appli or using an IC-appli that has a communication function.

Using Vodafone live! FeliCa






Complete service registration and settings configuration before using an IC-appli.
Purchase credit, prior to using the service.

Vodafone live! FeliCa Outline

Note

- IC-appli subscription and usage procedures vary depending on the IC-appli. For details, contact the Vodafone live! FeliCa-compatible service provider.
- Multiple IC-appli cannot run at the same time.
- Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any loss or alteration of IC Card data and settings due to failure or repair of your handset.
- Keep a note to make sure you can recall the security code and contact details of each service.

Activate IC-appli

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **IC-appli** and press  (Select).
3. Select **IC-appli Library** and press  (Select).
4. Select an IC-appli and press .

Service Registration & Settings Configuration

Procedures may vary by IC-appli. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Use Vodafone live! FeliCa-compatible Service

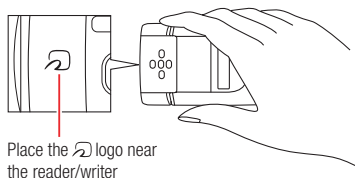
Note

Reader/writer will scan FeliCa IC Card during calls or Vodafone live! transmissions.

Using Vodafone live! FeliCa

Complete the service registration, initial setup and buy credits prior to using FeliCa.

1. Place the handset near a reader/writer.



2. Confirm IC Card scan results.

Check the scan results on the reader/writer display, etc. If scanning takes too long, move your handset slightly.


Note

- If the battery level is low at the start of downloading, the IC-appli may not be completely downloaded.
- If you replace the USIM card, downloaded IC-appli will no longer be available.

Downloading an IC-appli

In addition to the preinstalled IC-appli, download other Vodafone live! FeliCa service-compatible IC-appli. Download an IC-appli from the Web and save it to IC-appli folder in Data Folder.



Service registration must be completed prior to using a downloaded IC-appli.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **IC-appli** and press  (Select).
3. Select **IC-appli Library** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Download IC-appli** and press  (Select).

A confirmation screen appears.

5. Press  (Yes).

The download site appears.

6. Select an application and press  (Select).
7. Press  (Downld.).

Checking the IC Card Information

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **IC Card Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **IC Card Status** and press  (Select).






The IC Card usage status appears.

Preventing Vodafone live! FeliCa Usage

Disable Vodafone live! FeliCa. Use the following features to prevent others from making transactions.

IC Card Lock

 appears when IC card lock is activated.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **IC Card Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **IC Card Lock** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your security code (page 57).
5. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).




Remote Lock

Remotely disable Vodafone live! FeliCa from another handset.

Setting a Phone Number

Save phone numbers to **Phone No. to Lock**. Call from these preset numbers to activate Remote Lock.



1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **IC Card Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Remote Lock** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your security code (page 57).

5. Select **Phone No. to Lock** and press  (Select).
6. Select **<Empty>** and press .
7. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **From Phone Book:** Select a phone number from the Contacts list.
 - ◆ **Set Number:** Enter a phone number.
 - ◆ **From Call Log:** Select a phone number from the call log.
 - ◆ **Public Phone:** Allows calls from pay phones.
 - ◆ **Hidden:** Allows calls with no Caller ID.

Note



Preset the Call Remote Lock phone number before setting Remote Lock to **On**.

Remote Lock Setup

1. After Step 4 of "Setting a Phone Number" (page 215), select **Call Remote Lock** and press  (Select).
2. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Count for Lock

Set the number of calls for activating Remote Lock.


1. After Step 4 of "Setting a Phone Number" (page 215), select **Count for Lock** and press  (Select).
2. Enter the number of calls to receive and press  (OK).

Note

Count for Lock is cleared in the following cases.

- A call is received from another preset phone number.
- A call is answered.
- The battery of your handset runs out of power.
- The preset number of missed calls is not received within a three-minute period.

Activating Remote Lock

Call your handset from a preset phone number to lock IC Card. **Call Remote Lock** must be set to **On**, prior to activating Remote Lock (page 215).  appears when IC card lock is activated. When the lock is enabled after your handset receives the number of calls preset for Count for Lock (page 216), a Japanese announcement is played and then an English announcement is played.

1. Call your handset from a preset phone number.
2. End the call.







Make consecutive calls within a three-minute period. Once your phone receives the set number of missed calls, Remote Lock is activated.

Cancelling Remote Lock

Set IC card lock to **Off** (page 215).

Interface Settings

You can set whether a request from data obtained when you place your handset close to a specific reader/writer starts a function (Browser, Messaging, Vibration, Notification, V-appli).

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **IC Card Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Interface Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your security code (page 57).
5. Select an item and press  (Select).
6. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Data Folder

The data you save in your handset is stored in Data Folder. You can move the data stored in the folders of Data Folder and edit it for use with other functions.

In This Chapter

- Data Folder
- Using Files & Folders
- Displaying Files on a TV
- Using vObjects
- Using a Memory Card
- Using the USIM Card

Data Folder

Note

There are no My Saved Pages and Templates folders in Data Folder of a memory card.

Tip

To display the memory usage status, select **Memory Status**.

Data Folder of your handset stores the pictures you take, videos you record, files you receive from external devices, files you download from the Web, etc. Data Folder can store up to 40 MB or a total of a combination of approximately 1000 files and personal folders. You can also use Data Folder of a memory card (page 47). The ability to store the maximum amount of files will depend on available space in a memory card.

Structure of Data Folder

1. In standby mode, press , select **Data Folder** and press  (Select).





















The following folders are preinstalled in your handset.

- ◆ **Pictures:** Contains pictures and the Digital Camera folder. Pictures you take in Digital Camera are saved in DCF (page 221) format to the Digital Camera folder.
- ◆ **Videos:** Contains videos.
- ◆ **Melody&Music:** Contains sound files and the Recordings folder. Recordings you record with the voice recorder are saved to the Recordings folder.
- ◆ **V-appli:** Contains V-appli.
- ◆ **IC-appli:** Contains IC-appli.
- ◆ **My Saved Pages:** Contains URLs and Web pages.
- ◆ **Templates:** Contains the SMS Templates to store templates for use with SMS messages and the MMS Templates to store templates for use with MMS messages.
- ◆ **Other Files:** Contains vCard, vCalendar, SVG and text files, as well as files of unknown types.

Files Storable in Data Folder

Tip

- If your handset is repaired or the USIM card is replaced, Chaku Uta[®], V-appli, video and other files saved to the handset or a memory card may no longer be able to be used.
- Chaku Uta is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
- You may not be able to open a file on a PC, PDA, or other device if: You change the file name on your handset or the file name includes a "~" or "-."
- Whether a file can be sent by infrared or moved to a memory card depends on the forwarding and external device forwarding permission properties.

Folder	File Format (Icon)
Pictures	JPEG () , GIF () , WBMP () , PNG ()
Digital Camera	JPEG ¹ ()
Videos	MPEG-4 ² ()
Melody&Music	AMR/MPEG-4 ² () , SMF/SP-MIDI ² () , SMAF () , XMF ()
Recordings	AMR ()
V-appli	Java ()
IC-appli	
My Saved Pages	HTML/XHTML ()
SMS/MMS Templates	Template () / ()
Other Files	vCard () , vCalendar () , SVG () , Text () , Unknown File Types ³ ()

1 Files that do not comply with the DCF standard cannot be displayed. DCF is an abbreviation for "Design rule for Camera File system," a standard developed by the Japan Electronic Industry Development Association (JEIDA) for the purpose of facilitating the transfer of digital camera images between various devices.

2 Some files may not be able to be played.

3 These files cannot be displayed/played on your handset.


Using Files & Folders

Connecting to the Web from Folders

You can connect to the Web from within preinstalled folders in Data Folder.

- ◆ **DownloadPictures:** Allows you to download picture files.
- ◆ **Download Videos:** Allows you to download video files.
- ◆ **DownloadRingtone:** Allows you to download sound files.
- ◆ **DownloadMusic:** Allows you to download music files.
- ◆ **Download V-appli:** Allows you to download V-appli.
- ◆ **Download IC-appli:** Allows you to download IC-appli.

Editing Files & Folders


You can perform the following operations if you press  (Options) while viewing files or folders in Data Folder.

- ◆ **View:** Displays the selected file.
- ◆ **Open:** Opens the selected folder.
- ◆ **Connect:** Connects to the preset Web page.
- ◆ **Play:** Plays the selected file.
- ◆ **Start:** Runs an application.
- ◆ **Send:** Allows you to send the selected file as an MMS, infrared or Bluetooth™.
- ◆ **Delete:** Allows you to delete just the selected file or all files within the folder. Select **One** to delete the selected file and select **All** to delete all files. However, if the folder contains a personal folder, the files within the personal folder are not deleted even if you select **All**.

Note

- Some items do not appear depending on the selected file or folder.
- Some files may not be able to be displayed, played or sent depending on their file size, contents and type.
- Some files saved to a memory card from a PC or other device may not be able to be displayed/played.

Tip

To copy characters selected in a displayed text file to the clipboard (page 77), press  (Copy).

- ◆ **Select Multi:** Allows you to select multiple files and then simultaneously delete, copy or move them.
- ◆ **Set as Wallpaper:** Allows you to set a picture as the wallpaper for standby mode.
- ◆ **Set as Ringtone:** Allows you to set a sound as the ringtone.
- ◆ **Location:** Allows you to add location information to the selected picture file. If a picture file with location information is selected, you can connect to the web and display a map.
 - **Open Map:** Display a map for the saved location information.
 - **NAVI:** Start the navigation application.
 - **Start Positioning:** Locate your position and save the location information.
 - **To My Locations:** Save the registered location information to the My Locations list.
 - **Delete:** Delete the saved location information.
 - **View:** Display location information details.
- ◆ **Memory Card/Phone Memory:** Switches the display between Data Folder in your handset and Data Folder in a memory card.
- ◆ **Details:** Displays the properties of the selected file.
- ◆ **Thumbnail View/List View:** Switches the display of files and folders between thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text and guide).
- ◆ **View Settings:** Select **List View** to display a list of files/folders and select **Thumbnail View** to switch the view back. Select **Slideshow** to display the pictures in the folder in sequence automatically.
- ◆ **Manage Folder:** Allows you to create a new folder or edit the selected folder. You can select from **Create Folder**, **Rename Folder**, **Delete Folder** and **Folder Security**.
- ◆ **Sort by:** Changes the order that files within the selected folder appear. You can select a sort option from **Filename**, **Size**, **Date from Latest** and **Date from Oldest**.

- ◆ **Sort:** Changes the order that files within the My Saved Pages folder appear. Select **Title** or **Date**.
- ◆ **Create Folder:** Allows you to create a new folder.
- ◆ **Create Message:** Displays the Create Message screen for MMS or SMS.
- ◆ **Create Template:** Allows you to create a new template.
- ◆ **Edit Template:** Allows you to edit the selected template.
- ◆ **Rename:** Allows you to change the name of the selected file.
- ◆ **Mute/Unmute:** Mutes the playback sound.
- ◆ **Full Screen/Normal Screen:** Switches the screen display.
- ◆ **Hide Controller/Show Controller:** Hides or shows the controller.
- ◆ **Zoom:** Enlarges or reduces the selected picture.
- ◆ **Advanced:** Allows you to edit the selected picture.
- ◆ **Expand/Reduce:** Expands or reduces the image attached to the selected file.
- ◆ **Save Thumbnail:** Allows you to save a picture taken in Digital Camera mode as a thumbnail for sending attached to a message.
- ◆ **Save to Contacts/Save to Calendar:** Allows you to save vObjects to the Contacts list or Calendar.
- ◆ **Rewind:** Returns the play position of the video being played to the beginning.
- ◆ **Reset:** Returns a file to the state directly after it was read.
- ◆ **Save:** Allows you to save a file to your handset or a memory card.
- ◆ **Show Guidance/Hide Guidance:** Shows or hides the key guidance.
- ◆ **Security Settings:** Allows you to set the display method for the confirmation screen that appears when you attempt to use certain functions while an application is activated.

Displaying Files on a TV




Tip

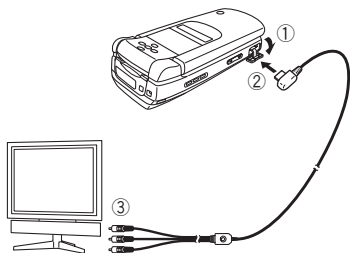
The use of a TV as a display for the camera is only possible while you are using the camera.

You can display the screen for taking a picture or recording a video (pages 125, 137), pictures and videos in Data Folder and TV display compatible applications (page 185) on a TV.

Setting the TV System

The TV systems supported by your handset are the NTSC and PAL systems. The SECAM system is not supported.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Phone Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **AV Output** and press  (Select).
4. Select **NTSC** or **PAL** and press  (Select).





Note

The screen display cannot be switched while you are recording a video or when the delay timer is activated.

TV Display

To use this feature, you need to connect your handset to the video input jacks of a TV with the video output cable.

1. Follow the procedure below to connect your handset to a TV.
 - ① Open the earphone microphone/AV OUT jack cover of your handset.
 - ② Insert the plug of the video output cable into the earphone microphone/AV OUT jack.
 - ③ Connect the video output cable to the video input jacks of the TV.
2. In the main display, open the screen you want to display on the TV, then press and hold .
3. Press  (Yes).

A confirmation screen appears.

The screen display switches from the main display to the TV.

To switch the screen display from the TV back to the main display, press and hold .

Using vObjects

About vObjects

vObject is a collective name for file formats that enable your handset and other vObject compatible handsets, PCs and other devices to exchange and mutually use data such as Contacts list entries and Calendar data.

You can send and receive vObjects as mail attachments (page 153) or transfer them by Bluetooth™, infrared or via a USB cable. Received files can be used on your handset. If you save vObjects to a memory card, you can use them directly from other memory card compatible handsets, PCs and other devices. Similarly, vObjects saved to a memory card from other handsets, PCs and other devices can be used on your phone.




- ◆ vObject compatible software is required to use the data of vObjects on a PC or other device.
- ◆ Depending on the software used, vObjects may not be displayed properly.
- ◆ Depending on the contents of vObjects, the import of vObjects received from another Vodafone handset, PC or other device may not be possible.
- ◆ Depending on the contents of vObjects, the exchange of vObjects between a vObject compatible handset and PC or other device may not be possible.
- ◆ When vObjects include many characters, all vObject may not be able to be sent or received.

Creating a vObject

1. Display a data.







For details on displaying the Contacts list, see page 90.

For details on checking appointments, see page 285.

2. Press  (Options).
3. Select **Send vCard** or **Send vCalendar** and press  (Select).
4. Select a storage place and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **To Data Folder:** Saves the data in vCard/vCalendar format to the Other Files folder in Data Folder of your handset.
 - ◆ **To Memory Card:** Saves the data in vCard/vCalendar format to the Other Files folder in Data Folder of a memory card.

Importing a vObject into a Function

You can add data imported in vObject format from another handset or PC to the Contacts list or Calendar of your handset.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Data Folder** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Other Files** and press .
3. Select a vObject and press .
4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Save to Contacts** or **Save to Calendar** and press  (Select).

Note







When importing a vObject that has a picture to the Contacts list, the picture cannot be saved to the Contacts list if it exceeds W112 × H112.

Using a Memory Card

You can check and edit pictures and other data saved to a memory card. You can also save a backup of Data Folder, Contacts list and other data in your handset to a memory card.

Formatting a Memory Card

You can use your handset to format a memory card.

- ◆ If a memory card is removed while reading or writing data, the data may be lost or the memory card may be damaged.
 - ◆ If a memory card is formatted by another device, it may not work properly with your handset. Be sure to use your handset to format a memory card.
 - ◆ Formatting a memory card deletes all data in the memory card.
1. Insert a memory card in the slot of your handset.
 2. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
 3. Select **Memory Settings** and press  (Select).
 4. Select **Memory Card** and press  (Select).
 5. Select **Format Card** and press  (Select).
 6. Enter your security code (page 57).
A confirmation screen appears.
 7. Press  (Yes).

Confirming Memory Card Usage Status


You can confirm the volume label, card memory size, used memory size and remaining memory size.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Memory Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Memory Card** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Card Details** and press  (Select).

Using a Memory Card for Transferring Data

You can transfer Contacts list and Calendar data between your handset and a memory card. We recommend using a memory card for backing up personal data. A memory card needs to be formatted before it is used for the first time. For details on formatting, see "Formatting a Memory Card" (page 229).

Note

When you back up/restore data, offline mode is set. The  indicator appears at the top of the display while offline mode is set. When the backing up/restoring of data is complete, offline mode is cancelled.

Using the USIM Card

You can move or copy Contacts list entries from your handset or a memory card to the USIM card, as well as move SMS messages from your handset to the USIM card. An indicator at the top of the Contacts list screen (page 90) indicates the storage place of the Contacts list entry. The maximum number of entries you can save to the Contacts list of the USIM card differs depending on the amount of available memory space in the USIM card.








Moving Contacts List Entries

Tip

To move Contacts list entries in a memory card to the USIM card, select **Memory Card** after Step 3. After the Contacts list in the memory card appears, proceed from Step 3.

Moving Entries to the USIM Card

You can move the name and default phone number (page 94) of an entry.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Contacts List** and press  (Select).
3. Press  (Options).
4. Select **Select Multi** and press  (Select).
5. Select a Contacts list entry and press .
To select another Contacts list entry, repeat Step 5.
6. Press  (Options).
7. Select **Move** and press  (Select).

8. Select **To USIM** and press  (Select).


◆ **To Phone:** Moves Contacts list entries with a check mark to the Contacts list of your handset.

◆ **To Memory Card:** Moves Contacts list entries with a check mark to the Contacts list of a memory card.

A confirmation screen appears.

9. Press  (Yes).

Moving Entries from the USIM Card

1. After Step 4 of “Moving Entries to the USIM Card” (page 231), select a Contacts list entries with  and then perform the rest of the Steps.







Copying Contacts List Entries

Tip




To copy Contacts list entries in a memory card to the USIM card, select **Memory Card** after Step 3. After the Contacts list in the memory card appears, proceed from Step 3.

Copying Entries to the USIM Card

You can copy the name and default phone number (page 94) of an entry.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Contacts List** and press  (Select).
3. Press  (Options).
4. Select **Select Multi** and press  (Select).
5. Select a Contacts list entry and press .


To select another Contacts list entry, repeat Step 5.

6. Press  (Options).
7. Select **Copy** and press  (Select).
8. Select **To USIM** and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **To Phone:** Copies Contacts list entries with a check mark to the Contacts list of your handset.
 - ◆ **To Memory Card:** Copies Contacts list entries with a check mark to the Contacts list of a memory card.

A confirmation screen appears.

9. Press  (Yes).


Copying Entries from the USIM Card

1. After Step 4 of “Copying Entries to the USIM Card” (above), select the Contacts list entries with  and then perform the rest of the Steps.

Moving SMS Messages

You can move messages in Received Msgs. (page 166) and Sent Messages (page 167) of your handset and messages in your USIM card. The maximum number of messages you can save to the USIM card differs depending on the amount of available memory space in the USIM card.

Moving Messages to the USIM Card

1. In Received Msgs. or Sent Messages, select a message and press .
2. Press  (Options).
3. Select **Move to USIM** and press  (Select).

◆ **Move to Phone:** Moves messages in the USIM card to your handset.

Moving Messages from the USIM Card

1. In Step 1 of “Moving Messages to the USIM Card” (above), select the messages with  and then perform the rest of the Steps.

Settings


You can make various settings to personalise your handset.

In This Chapter

- **Mode Settings**
- **Display Settings**
- **Phone Settings**
- **Call Settings**
- **Security Settings**
- **Memory Settings**
- **Network Settings**
- **Shortcut Menu**

Mode Settings

Tip

To switch the phone profile to Silent, press and hold  in standby mode. To switch back to previous profile, press and hold  in standby mode.

Set and customise sound and vibration settings. Your handset has four preset profiles. You can change the sound and vibration settings of each profile.



Normal: Profile for ordinary use.



Silent: Profile for when you do not want your handset to emit any sound.








Car: Profile for when you want the maximum volume level so that you can hear your handset while you are driving.



Meeting: Profile for configuring all settings to suit your needs.

Switching Profiles

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Mode Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select a profile and press .

If a profile other than Normal is set, the indicator ( /  / ) for the profile appears at the top of the display.







Tip

You can also personalise Normal profile if you press  in standby mode, select **Settings** and then select **Sound Settings**.

Personalising Profiles

Personalising the Ringtone Volume

You can set the ringtone volume.

1. After Step 2 of “Switching Profiles” (page 236), select **Normal**, **Car** or **Meeting** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Personalise** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Ringtone Volume** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Voice Call**, **Video Call** or **Received Message** and press  (Select).
5. Use  to adjust the volume and press  (OK).

Note





- If a video file is set as the ringtone, the video is displayed for incoming calls and the picture set as the incoming picture (page 246) is not displayed.
- A video file cannot be set as the ringtone for incoming messages.


Tip




To set the ringtone duration for incoming messages, select **Received Message** after Step 3, press  (Options) and select **Ringtone Duration**.

Personalising the Ringtone

You can set a preinstalled sound in your handset or a sound or video in Data Folder as the ringtone.

1. After Step 2 of "Switching Profiles" (page 236), select **Normal**, **Car** or **Meeting** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Personalise** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Assign Ringtone** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Voice Call**, **Video Call** or **Received Message** and press  (Select/Options).







If you selected **Received Message**, select **Ringtone** and press  (Select).

5. Select a type of tone and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Preset Patterns:** Allows you to select from patterns preinstalled in your handset.
 - ◆ **Preset Sounds:** Allows you to select from melodies and sound effects preinstalled in your handset.
 - ◆ **My Sounds:** Allows you to select from sound and video files stored in Data Folder.
6. Select a tone and press .
7. Press  (Assign).

Note






When the mode settings is set to **Silent** and vibration is set to **Off**, your handset does not vibrate regardless of the settings for the **Calendar** and **Alarm**.

Personalising the Vibration

1. After Step 2 of "Switching Profiles" (page 236), select **Normal**, **Silent**, **Car** or **Meeting** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Personalise** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Vibration** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Voice Call**, **Video Call** or **Received Message** and press  (Select).
If you selected **Silent** in Step 1, select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).
5. Select a vibration pattern and press .





Personalising the Keypad Volume

You can set the keypad tone volume.

1. After Step 2 of "Switching Profiles" (page 236), select **Normal**, **Car** or **Meeting** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Personalise** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Keypad Volume** and press  (Select).
4. Use  to adjust the volume and press  (OK).







Personalising the Keypad Tone

You can set the keypad tone.

1. After Step 2 of "Switching Profiles" (page 236), select **Normal**, **Car** or **Meeting** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Personalise** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Keypad Tones** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Original 1** or **Original 2** and press  (Select).

Personalising the Sound Effects Volume

You can set the volume level of each of the sound effects for turning on/off the power, opening/closing your handset and errors.










1. After Step 2 of "Switching Profiles" (page 236), select **Normal**, **Car** or **Meeting** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Personalise** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Sound Effects Vol.** and press  (Select).
4. Select an item and press  (Select).
5. Use  to adjust the volume and press  (OK).

Note

Files containing pictures cannot be set as sound effects.

Personalising the Sound Effects

You can set each of the sound effects for turning on/off the power and opening/closing your handset.






1. After Step 2 of "Switching Profiles" (page 236), select **Normal**, **Car** or **Meeting** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Personalise** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Sound Effects** and press  (Select).
4. Select an item and press  (Select).
5. Select a type of tone and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Preset Pattern:** Allows you to set the default sound effect.
 - ◆ **Preset Sounds:** Allows you to select from melodies and sound effects preinstalled in your handset. Select a sound, press  and then press  (Assign).
 - ◆ **My Sounds:** Allows you to select from sound files stored in Data Folder. Select a sound, press  and then press  (Assign).

Tip

When the mode settings is set to **Silent**, the battery alarm can only be heard from the earpiece during a call.





Personalising the Multimedia Volume

You can set the volume level for messaging, Vodafone live! and playing sound data in Data Folder.

1. After Step 2 of "Switching Profiles" (page 236), select **Normal**, **Car** or **Meeting** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Personalise** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Multimedia Volume** and press  (Select).
4. Use  to adjust the volume and press  (OK).

Personalising the Battery Alarm

When the battery level is very low and your handset is about to run out of power, the battery alarm tone plays. You can set whether to play the battery alarm tone.





1. After Step 2 of "Switching Profiles" (page 236), select **Normal**, **Car** or **Meeting** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Personalise** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Battery Alarm** and press  (Select).
4. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Note

Whether an alarm tone plays in Normal profile and Car profile depends on the alarm (page 287) and Calendar (page 283) settings.







Personalising the Alarm Tone

You can set whether the alarm tone plays for Silent profile and Meeting profile.

1. After Step 2 of “Switching Profiles” (page 236), select **Silent** or **Meeting** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Personalise** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Alarm** and press  (Select).
4. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).


Resetting Profiles

You can reset the settings of each profile.

1. In standby mode, press , Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Mode Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select a profile and press  (Options).
4. Select **Set to Default** and press  (Select).
5. Enter your security code (page 57).
A confirmation screen appears.
6. Press  (Yes).

Display Settings









Tip

If the picture you want to set as the wallpaper does not fit the screen, press  (Options) after Step 6 and perform one of the following operations.

- **Cut:** Allows you to trim the picture to fit the screen.
- **Zoom:** Enlarges or reduces the picture and then allows you to position and trim the picture.
- **Fit to Width:** Reduces the picture to fit the width of the screen.
- **Fit to Length:** Reduces the picture to fit the height of the screen.
- **Rotate Image:** Rotates the picture 90° anticlockwise and then allows you to trim the picture.

Setting the Wallpaper

You can set a picture preinstalled in your handset or taken with the camera as the wallpaper for standby mode.








1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Display Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Main Display** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Wallpaper** and press  (Select).
5. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Wallpaper List:** Allows you to select from pictures preinstalled in your handset.
 - ◆ **My Pictures:** Allows you to select from pictures stored in the Pictures folder of Data Folder.
 - ◆ **Off:** Sets no picture.
 - ◆ **Custom Screens:** Sets the picture set for the Custom Screens settings (page 245).
6. Select a picture and press .
7. Press  (Set/OK).

Tip

- If the wallpaper setting (page 244) is set after the custom screens setting is set, the wallpaper set for the wallpaper setting is displayed.
- If the custom screens setting is set after the wallpaper setting (page 244) is set, the wallpaper set for the custom screens setting is displayed.









Custom Screens

You can change the wallpaper and the icons and background of the main menu.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Display Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Main Display** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Custom Screens** and press  (Select).
5. Select a custom screen and press  (View).
6. Press  (Set).







Setting the Incoming Display

You can set a picture to appear on the main display for incoming calls. You can also set whether the other party's name appear on the external display for incoming calls.








1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Voice Call** or **Video Call** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Caller Details** and press  (Select).
5. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Incoming Picture:** Allows you to set the incoming picture. Set **Preset Picture** (default picture) or select a picture from **My Pictures** (pictures saved to the Pictures folder in Data Folder).
 - ◆ **Caller Picture:** Allows you to display a picture associated with a caller in the Contacts list when a call is received from that caller. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Caller Info:** Allows you to set the display of the name set for a caller in the Contacts list on the external display when a call is received from that caller. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Setting the Clock Display







Setting the Clock Type Display for the Main Display

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Display Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Main Display** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Clock Type Display** and press  (Select).
5. Select a clock type and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **1-line Digital:** Displays the time and date in one-line digital view.
 - ◆ **2-line Digital:** Displays the time and date in two-line digital view.
 - ◆ **Analog (Home):** Displays an analog clock.
 - ◆ **World (Digital):** Displays the city name and the time and date in one-line digital view for both the City1 and City2.
 - ◆ **World (Analog):** Displays the city name and the time and date in one-line analog view for both the City1 and City2.
 - ◆ **Calendar:** Displays the calendar.
 - ◆ **Off:** Displays no time and date.

Setting Wallpaper & Clock (External Display)










1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Display Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **External Display** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Clock Type Display** and press  (Select).
5. Select a clock type and press  (View).
6. Press  (Set).

Switching between the 12-hour and 24-hour Clock

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Phone Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Date&Time** and press  (Select).
4. Select **12 hour/24 hour** and press  (Select).
5. Select **12 hour** or **24 hour** and press  (Select).







Setting the Backlights

You can adjust the brightness and lighting time of the display backlights.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Display Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Main Display** or **External Display** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Backlight Settings** and press  (Select).
If you selected **External Display** in Step 3, enter a lighting time and press  (OK).
5. Select an item and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Brightness:** Allows you to set the brightness of the main display backlight. Select **Dark** or **Bright** and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Lighting Time:** Allows you to set the lighting time of the main display backlight. Enter a time (0 to 60 seconds) and press  (OK).







Setting Operator Name Display

You can set whether to display the operator name in standby mode.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Display Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Main Display** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Operator Name** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).







Setting the Display Power Saving

You can save battery power by setting the handset to turn off the display after a specified time of inactivity elapses. You can set the display time to 30 seconds, 1 minute or 3 minutes.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Display Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Main Display** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Power Saving** and press  (Select).
5. Select a display time and press  (Select).





Setting the Display of Cell Information

You can set whether the cell information sent from a base station is displayed in standby mode when you use your handset on a mobile phone network based on Micro Cellular Network (MCN) technology.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Display Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Main Display** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Cell Information** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Adjusting the Contrast of the External Display

You can adjust the contrast of the external display to one of nine levels.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Display Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **External Display** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Contrast** and press  (Select).
5. Close your handset.

A screen for adjusting the contrast appears on the external display.







6. Use the side keys (/) to adjust the contrast, open your handset and press  (OK).

Shortcut Keys

This feature allows you to access a function from standby mode easily and quickly by pressing a side key (▲) or navigation key. You can change the functions accessed.

Setting the Side Shortcut Key Function





You can change the function accessed if you simply press and hold a side key (▲) from standby mode.














1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Phone Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Shortcuts** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Side Up Key** and press  (Select).
5. Select a function and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **NAVI:** Allows you to start the Navigation Application (page 199).
 - ◆ **Profile Switch:** Allows you to switch profiles (page 236).
 - ◆ **Answerphone:** Allows you to set or cancel the answerphone (page 257).
 - ◆ **Torch:** Allows you to turn on the mobile light (page 303).

Tip

To reset which functions are assigned to the navigation keys, select **Set to Default** after Step 5.

Setting the Navigation Key Shortcuts

You can change the functions accessed when you press the navigation keys , ,  and  from standby mode. The functions you can set are Shortcut menu (page 281), Phonebook (page 90), Dialed Numbers (page 62) and Received Calls (page 62).








1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Phone Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Shortcuts** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Navigation Keys** and press  (Select).
5. Press  (Options).
6. Select **Change** and press  (Select).
7. Select the function you want to assign to  and press  (Select).
8. Select the function you want to assign to  and press  (Select).
9. Select the function you want to assign to  and press  (Select).

The remaining function is assigned automatically to .

External Light Settings








Setting the Notification External Light

If you have unchecked information (missed calls, unread messages and Voice Mail), the external light flashes when your handset is closed. You can select from three colours for the flashing of the external light or set the external light not to flash.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Phone Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **External Light** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Notification** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Missed Calls**, **Messages** or **Voice Mail** and press  (Select).
6. Select a colour and press  (Select).

Setting the Incoming External Light

You can select from five colours for the external light that flashes when you have an incoming voice call, video call or message. You can also set the external light not to flash.






1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Phone Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **External Light** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Incoming** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Voice Call**, **Video Call** or **Messaging** and press  (Select).
6. Select a colour and press  (Select).

Note

You can still make calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard) when offline mode is set.

Offline Mode Setting

You can use offline mode to block signal reception and transmission without turning off the power. Offline mode disables the use of network services for making and receiving calls, sending and receiving messages, etc.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Phone Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Offline Mode** and press  (Select).
4. Select **On** and press  (Select).


The  indicator appears at the top of the display.

Call Settings

Note

The answerphone is unavailable for video calls and call waiting.







Tip

You can also set the answerphone if you press and hold  in standby mode.

Answerphone



This feature can record a caller's message when you are unable to answer a voice call. Your handset can store up to 3 messages and each message can be up to 15 seconds long.

Setting the Answerphone



1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Answerphone** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Setting** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** and press  (Select).

The  indicator appears on the standby screen.

Setting the Ringing Duration

1. After Step 3 of "Setting the Answerphone" (above), select **Ringing Duration** and press  (Select).
2. Enter the ringing duration (0 to 60 seconds) and press  (OK).

Tip

- You can also display the Message list if you press  in standby mode.
- To delete a message, press  (Options) after Step 1 and select **Delete**.

Playing a Message








1. After Step 3 of “Setting the Answerphone” (page 257), select **Recordings** and press  (Select).

The Message list appears.

2. Select a message and press .







Setting the Auto Answer

You can answer a call without having to press a key while the stereo handsfree headset is connected. You can also change the length of time before a call is answered.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Voice Call** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Auto Answer** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** and press  (Select).
6. Enter the answer time (1 to 29 seconds) and press  (OK).

Setting Mute

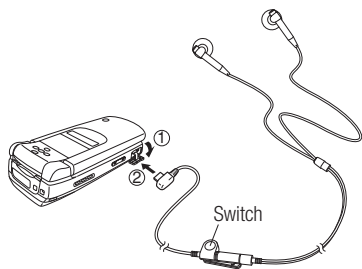
You can mute the outgoing voice or both the outgoing voice and incoming voice for calls.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Voice Call** or **Video Call** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Mute** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Mute My Voice**, **Mute All** or **Off** and press  (Select).








Using the stereo handsfree headset

If you use the stereo handsfree headset with switch, simply pressing the switch of the stereo handsfree headset allows you to dial a preset phone number or answer a call without even opening your handset.

1. Open the earphone microphone jack cover (①).
2. Insert the plug of the stereo handsfree headset into the earphone microphone jack (②).



Setting the Phone Number

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Voice Call** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Earphone Call** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** and press  (Select).
6. Select the input method for the phone number and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Set Number:** Allows you to directly enter a phone number.
 - ◆ **From Contacts:** Allows you to select a phone number from the Contacts list (page 90).


One-touch Calling

1. In standby mode, press and hold the switch of the stereo handsfree headset.


Short beeps are heard from the earphone and a call is made to the preset phone number.

If you press and hold the switch again during dialling, a beep is heard and the call is cancelled.
2. Press and hold the switch of the stereo handsfree headset to end the call.

A beep is heard from the earphone and the call ends.







Alternatively, you can press  to end the call.

One-touch Answering

1. A call is received.
2. Press and hold the switch of the stereo handsfree headset.
Short beeps are heard from the earphone and a connection is established.
If the caller made a video call, the video call begins.
3. Press and hold the switch of the stereo handsfree headset to end the call.
A beep is heard from the earphone and the call ends.
Alternatively, you can press  to end the call.

Enabling/Disabling Incoming Voice Calls during Data Communication






You can set whether to receive incoming voice calls during data communication.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Voice Call** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Call Priority** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Enable** or **Disable** and press  (Select).







Using International Call Service

When making an international call, you can simply add the international code (Vodafone international access code, 0046 + 010) and then select a country code from a list after entering the other party's phone number. You can also change the international code and add entries to the country code list.

Adding the International Code & Country Code

1. In standby mode, enter a phone number and press  (Options).
2. Select **International Call** and press  (Select).
3. Select the country of the other party and press .
4. Select **Japan** or **Abroad** and press  (Select).
5. Press .

Changing the International Code

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Voice Call** and press  (Select).
4. Select **International Call** and press  (Select).
5. Select **International Code** and press  (Select).

The current international code setting appears.

To delete the international code, press and hold .






6. Enter a number and press  (OK).

Note


To edit or delete an entry, select the entry and press  (Options). However, only the entries for the three additional country codes can be deleted.

Adding an Entry to the Country Code List

The country code list already includes the country codes of 17 countries. You can also edit and add entries. The list can contain up to 20 entries.

1. After Step 4 of “Changing the International Code” (page 262), select **Country List** and press  (Select).
2. Press  (Options).
3. Select **Add** and press  (Select).
4. Enter a country name and press .
5. Enter a country code and press  (OK).





Tip

Even if Auto Prefix is set to **Off**, you can press  (Options) while a phone number is displayed, select **Hide My ID** or **Show My ID** and then make a call.

Setting the Caller ID



You can set whether to notify the other party of your phone number when you make a call.

Automatically Hiding/Showing Caller ID

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Voice Call** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Prefix Settings** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Auto Prefix** and press  (Select).
6. Select **Hide My ID**, **Show My ID** or **Off** and press  (Select).








Hiding Caller ID when Calling from Missed Calls

You can set not to notify the other party of your phone number when you select and call a phone number in Missed Calls (page 62) that is not stored in the Contacts list.

1. After Step 4 of “Automatically Hiding/Showing Caller ID” (above), select **Hide to Missed Call** and press  (Select).
2. Select **On** and press  (Select).

Setting the Earpiece/Speaker Volume







You can set the earpiece/speaker volume for voice calls and video calls.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Common Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Select a volume and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Earpiece Volume:** Allows you to set the volume for sound heard from the earpiece.
 - ◆ **Speaker Volume:** Allows you to set the volume for sound heard from the speaker.
5. Use  to adjust the volume and press  (OK).















While you are adjusting the volume, a confirmation tone is played to enable you to hear the volume level.







Setting the Open to Answer

This feature allows you to answer an incoming call by simply opening your handset.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Common Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Open to Answer** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).

Setting the Any Key Answer

This feature allows you to answer incoming calls with any key. If Any Key Answer is set to **On**, you can answer an incoming call with any of , ,  to , , ,  and . In turnover style, ,  and . If it is set to **Off**, you can answer an incoming call with  and . In turnover style, .

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Call Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Common Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Any Key Answer** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** or **Off** and press  (Select).







Security Settings

PIN Codes

You can set the various PIN code (page 43) settings used for USIM card security.








Setting PIN1 Code Request

You can set whether to request the entering of your PIN1 code to perform verification each time a USIM card is inserted into the handset and the power is turned on.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Security Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **PIN1 Code Request** and press  (Select).
4. Select **On** and press  (Select).
5. Enter your PIN1 code and press  (OK).

Changing PIN Codes

You can change the PIN1 code and PIN2 code (page 43).

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Security Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Change PIN1** or **Change PIN2** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your current PIN1 code or PIN2 code and press  (OK).
5. Enter your new PIN1 code or PIN2 code and press  (OK).
6. Re-enter your new PIN1 code or PIN2 code for confirmation and press  (OK).

Note



Set PIN1 Code Request to **On** before you change a PIN1 code.

Note

If the PUK1/PUK2 code is incorrectly entered ten times in a row, the USIM lock is set. If the USIM lock is set, it cannot be cancelled. Contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).





Cancelling the PIN Lock

If the PIN1 code or PIN2 code is incorrectly entered three times in a row, the PIN1/PIN2 lock is set. You can cancel the PIN1/PIN2 lock by entering a personal unblocking key code (PUK1/PUK2 code). For details on the personal unblocking key codes, contact Vodafone General Information (page 360).

1. Enter the PUK1/PUK2 code (page 43) in the PUK1/PUK2 code input screen.
2. Enter your new PIN1 code or PIN2 code and press  (OK).
3. Re-enter your new PIN1 code or PIN2 code for confirmation and press  (OK).

Changing the Security Code

You can change the security code (page 57) required to use some functions and modify the settings of your handset. The initial security code is “9999” or the four-digit number you selected when you concluded your contract.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Security Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Change Password** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your current security code (page 57).
5. Enter your new security code.
6. Re-enter your new security code for confirmation.

Note

When the phone lock is activated, the information prompt (page 39) does not appear.

Tip






When the phone lock is activated, you can still perform the following operations.

- Turn the power on and off.
- Enter the PIN1 code if the PIN1 Code Request (page 267) is set to **On**.
- Cancel the phone lock temporarily.
- Make calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard).
- Answer voice calls and video calls (but the Open to Answer and Any Key Answer functions are unavailable).
- Place calls on hold (page 59).
- Divert calls (page 68).
- Reject calls (page 59).
- Adjust the ringtone volume while a call is being received (page 59).
- Stop the alarm.
- Pause the V-appli (page 185) set to run in standby mode.

Phone Lock

Set Phone Lock to prevent others from using your handset. When Phone Lock is activated, your security code (page 57) is required to use the handset.

Setting Phone Lock


1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Security Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Phone Lock** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your security code (page 57).
5. Select an item and press  (Select).

◆ **Phone Closed:** Phone Lock is activated when you close your handset.

◆ **Power Saving:** Activates Phone Lock when your handset goes into power saving mode.

◆ **Power On:** Activates Phone Lock when the handset is powered on.

6. Select **On** and press  (Select).

The  indicator appears on the standby screen when the Phone Lock is activated.







Using Your Handset while Phone Lock is Activated

To use your handset while Phone Lock is activated, enter your security code and press  (OK).

Rejecting Incoming Calls

Rejecting Specific Incoming Calls

You can set your handset to reject calls with no Caller ID or calls from phone numbers not in the Contacts list.









1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Security Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Reject Calls** and press  (Select).
4. Select a type of call and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Hidden:** Rejects calls with no Caller ID.
 - ◆ **Public Phone:** Rejects calls from pay phones.
 - ◆ **Unavailable:** Rejects calls for which the Caller ID cannot be displayed.
 - ◆ **Unknown:** Rejects calls from phone numbers not in the Contacts list.
 - ◆ **Select Contact:** Rejects calls from phone numbers in the Rejection list (page 271).
5. Select **On** and press  (Select).


Tip

If a call is received from a phone number for which Reject Calls is set, the ringtone does not play and your handset does not vibrate, but the information prompt (page 39) appears and you can confirm the call in Missed Calls (page 62).

Adding Phone Numbers to the Rejection List

You can save up to 20 phone numbers to the Rejection list to reject calls from those phone numbers.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Security Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Reject Calls** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Select Contact** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** and press  (Select).
6. Enter your security code (page 57).
7. Press  (Add).
8. Select the input method for the phone number and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **From Phonebook:** Allows you to select a phone number from the Contacts list (page 90).
 - ◆ **Set Number:** Allows you to directly enter a phone number.
 - ◆ **From Call Log:** Allows you to select a phone number from the call log (page 62).

To add a second or subsequent phone number, press  (Options) after Step 6, select **Add** and proceed from Step 8.








Rejecting Messages

Tip

To check details or edit/delete an email address or phone number, select the email address or phone number after Step 5 and press  (Options).

Adding an Email Address or Phone Number to the Rejection List






You can add up to 50 email addresses or phone numbers to the Rejection list to reject messages from those email addresses and phone numbers.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Security Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Reject Addresses** and press  (Select).
4. Select **On** and press  (Select).
5. Enter your security code (page 57).
6. Press  (Add).
7. Select an input method for the email address or phone number and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **From Contacts:** Allows you to select an email address or phone number from the Contacts list (page 90).
 - ◆ **Enter Addresses:** Allows you to directly enter an email address or phone number.

To add a second or subsequent email address or phone number, press  (Options) after Step 5, select **Add** and proceed from Step 7.

Setting Secret Mode

You can set whether to show Contacts list entries saved as secret (page 85). Set secret mode to **On** if you want to show secret entries and set secret mode to **Off** if you want to hide secret entries.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Security Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Secret Mode** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your security code (page 57).
5. Select **On** and press  (Select).

The  indicator appears on the display.

Fixed Dialling Numbers

You can restrict the making of calls and sending of messages to only phone numbers in the Fixed Dialling Number list of the USIM card.








Note

The Fixed Dialling Numbers setting is only available when you are using a USIM card that supports Fixed Dialling Numbers.

Tip

You can still make calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard) when Fixed Dialling Numbers is set to **On**.


Setting Fixed Dialling Numbers

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Security Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Fixed Dialling No.** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Setting** and press  (Select).
5. Enter your PIN2 code and press  (OK).
6. Select **On** and press  (Select).

Note













Before performing this operation, set the Fixed Dialling Number setting to **On** beforehand (page 273).

Tip

To display details, make a call, create a message or delete/edit a phone number, select a phone number after Step 4 and press  (Options).

Adding Phone Numbers to the Fixed Dialling Number List

The maximum number of phone numbers you can add to the Fixed Dialling Numbers list differs depending on the USIM card.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Security Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Fixed Dialling No.** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Edit Dial List** and press  (Select).
5. Select **<Empty>** and press  (Add).
6. Enter your PIN2 code and press  (OK).
7. Select **Name** or **Dial Number** and press  (Options).
8. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
9. Enter a name or phone number and press .
10. Press  (Options) after setting the items.
11. Select **OK** and press  (Select).

Note

When the key guard is set, the information prompt (page 39) does not appear.

Tip

When the key guard is set, you can still perform the following operations.

- Cancel the key guard.
- Make calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard).
- Answer voice calls and video calls (but the Open to Answer and Any Key Answer functions are unavailable).
- Record answerphone messages (page 59).
- Place calls on hold (page 59).
- Divert calls (page 68).
- Reject calls (page 59).
- Adjust the ringtone volume while a call is being received (page 59).
- Stop the alarm.
- Pause the V-appli (page 185) set to run in standby mode.
- Use one-touch calling from a stereo handsfree headset (page 259).

Key Guard

The key guard allows you to disable the keys to prevent unintentional operations while your handset is in your bag or pocket.

Setting the Key Guard

1. In standby mode, press and hold .

The  indicator appears on the standby screen.

Cancelling the Key Guard

1. Press and hold  while the key guard is set.

Tip

- Until you cancel the hold, it is enabled each time you close your handset.
- When the battery level is low, the hold is not set.
- You can operate your handset as usual when it is open.

Hold

The hold of your handset allows you to disable the external navigation keys and side keys to prevent unintentional operations while your handset is closed.

Setting the Hold

1. Press and hold  when your handset is closed.

The  indicator appears on the external display.

Cancelling the Hold

1. Press and hold  when your handset is closed.

Memory Settings

Note







This operation does not reset security code (page 57), USIM card data or memory card data.

Tip

To view an approximate indication of the memory status for messages, Data Folder, Contacts list and Calendar, select **Memory Status** after Step 3.

Initialising Your Handset

You can delete all saved data such as Contacts list entries, Data Folder files and messages, as well as reset all function settings.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Memory Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Phone Memory** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Clear Memory** and press  (Select).
5. Enter your security code (page 57).
A confirmation screen appears.
6. Press  (Yes).

Your handset is initialised and then automatically turned off and on.

A confirmation screen is displayed while the IC card lock is set. You cannot initialise your handset until you cancel the IC card lock.









Network Settings

Application Settings



You can set and edit the network connection information for the browser, MMS and other applications individually.

Setting the Network Connection Information

You can set all the network connection information (network access point, proxy, etc.) for each application.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Network Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Settings** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Browser/Java**, **MMS** or **Streaming** and press  (Select).
5. Select **<Empty>** and press  (Options).
6. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
7. Select an item and press .
8. Enter/select information.



For each item, press  or  (OK) and set the information.

9. Press  (Options) after the settings the items.
10. Select **Save** and press  (Select).



A confirmation screen appears.

11. Press  (Yes).

Tip

To display, edit, copy or delete connection information, select connection information after Step 1 and press  (Options). However, any profile indicated by  cannot be displayed, edited or copied.

Tip












To display, edit, copy or delete NAP information, select information after Step 3 and press  (Options). However, any profile indicated by  cannot be displayed or copied.

Modifying Application Settings





1. After Step 3 of “Setting the Network Connection Information” (page 278), select an application and press .
2. Select a connection information and press .

Internet Settings

You can edit the network access point (NAP) information used when modifying application settings (above).






1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Network Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Internet** and press  (Select).
4. Select **<Empty>** and press  (Add).
5. Select an item and press .
6. Enter/select information.
For each item, press  or  (OK) and set the information.
7. Press  (Options) after the settings the items.
8. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
A confirmation screen appears.
9. Press  (Yes).

Tip

The first time you turn on the power after purchasing your handset, a prompt for retrieving network connection information appears if you press , ,  or .










Retrieving Network Information

Before you can use Vodafone live!, you need to retrieve the network connection information.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Network Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Retrieve NW Info.** and press  (Select).
A confirmation screen appears.
4. Press  (Yes).

External Device Setting





You can set the access point name (APN) of the network information to write to your handset in order to perform packet communication from an external device such as a PC.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Network Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **External Device** and press  (Select).
4. Select **<Empty>** and press  (Options).
5. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
6. Enter the access point name and press  (Options).
7. Select **OK** and press  (Select).
A confirmation screen appears.
8. Press  (Yes).

Shortcut Menu



If you assign frequently used functions in the Shortcut menu, you can access them quickly and easily.

Setting the Shortcut Menu


1. In standby mode, press .
2. Select **<Empty>** and press .
3. Press  (Yes).
4. Select a function and press  (Select).

If you selected **Data Folder** or **Contacts List**, you can set a shortcut for a file, folder or Contacts list entry. Select the item you want to set.

Accessing a Function from the Shortcut Menu

1. In standby mode, press .
- Shortcut menu screen appears.
2. Select a function and press .

Tip

To edit a name, cancel a setting or switch the view (**Thumbnail View/List View**), select a function after Step 1 and press  (Options).

Convenient Functions

Your handset includes various convenient functions.

In This Chapter

- **Calendar**
- **Alarms**
- **Dictionary**
- **Calculator**
- **Converter**
- **Voice Recorder**
- **Countdown Timer**
- **Notepad**
- **Number Memo**
- **World Clock**
- **Backup**
- **Barcode**
- **Flashlight**
- **Sending Touch Tones**

Calendar



Month View Screen







Note

- If you change the Main City setting (page 55) in the clock settings, the start and end dates and times of appointments are automatically changed to those in the time zone of the city. Also, when DST (Daylight Saving Time) is set to **On**, the start and end dates and times are automatically changed for summer time.
- When the mode settings (page 236) is set to Silent or Meeting and the alarm is set to **Off**, the alarm does not play.

Calendar allows you to save your appointments and use your handset as a scheduler.

Adding a New Appointment

You can save up to 100 appointments.




1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Calendar** and press  (Select).
3. Press  (Options).
4. Select **New Appointment** and press  (Select).
5. Select an item and press .
 - ◆ **Title:** Allows you to enter the title (up to 16 characters) of the appointment.
 - ◆ **Start Date&Time:** Allows you to set the start date and time for the appointment.
To set both the date and time, select **Date&Time**. To select only the date, select **Date only**.
 - ◆ **End Date&Time:** Allows you to set the end date and time for the appointment.
 - ◆ **No Repeat/Daily/Weekly/Monthly/Yearly/End of Month:** Allows you to set a repeat interval and period for the appointment. If you set **Monthly** for the 29th, 30th or 31st, the repeat is only set for months that include that date. If you set the start date to the last day of the month, you can set the setting to **End of Month**.
 - ◆ **Memo:** Allows you to enter the contents (up to 128 characters) of the appointment.

Note


If the alarm time arrives while the power is off, the power turns on automatically and the alarm sounds. However, note that if PIN1 Code Request (page 267) is set to **On**, calls and messages cannot be received until you enter the PIN1 code (page 43) to display the standby screen after stopping the alarm.

Tip

If the time set for an alarm is reached during an incoming/outgoing voice call or video call, while taking a picture or recording a video or during infrared or other data communication, the alarm plays after the call, taking of a picture, recording of a video or communication ends.

- ◆ **Alarm:** Allows you to set the alarm. Select **On** and then set the alarm date and time, alarm tone, alarm volume and vibration. After setting the items, press  (Options) and select **Save**.
 - ◆ **Location:** Allows you to enter the location information (up to 50 characters).
 - ◆ **None Category/Meeting/Date/Travel/Holiday/Anniversary/Miscellaneous:**
Allows you to set the category of the appointment.
6. Press  (Options) after setting the items.
 7. Select **Save** and press  (Select).


Alarm Date & Time

At the date and time set for an alarm, the alarm plays and “Appointment” appears in the external display. To stop the alarm, press any key. After the alarm stops, press  (View) to check the appointment details.

Tip

To switch the view between month, week, day and all appointments, press  (Options) after Step 2 and select **Calendar View**.

Checking Appointments

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).

2. Select **Calendar** and press  (Select).

The month view screen appears.

Press  to switch to the previous month and press  to switch to the next month.

3. Use  to select a date and press .

A list of appointments for the selected date appears.

4. Select an appointment and press .

The details of the appointment appear.



Tip

- The items displayed vary depending on the Calendar view.
- To save an edited appointment as a new appointment without overwriting the original appointment, press  (Options) and select **Save as**.

Managing Appointments

You can perform the following operations if you select a date or appointment and press

 (Options) from the month, week, day or all appointments view.




- ◆ **View:** Displays the details of the selected appointment.
- ◆ **Day View:** Displays a list of appointments set for the selected date.
- ◆ **Edit:** Allows you to edit the appointment.
- ◆ **Delete:** Deletes the appointment.
- ◆ **Go to Date:** Allows you to enter a date and then display the appointments for that date.
- ◆ **Select Multi:** Allows you to select multiple appointments in all appointments view and then delete or export them. To select or unselect appointments, select an appointment with the cursor and press  or press  (Options) and select **Mark/Unmark** or **Mark all/Unmark all**.
- ◆ **Send vCalendar:** Allows you to convert the appointment to vCalendar format and then save it to Data Folder or a memory card or attach it to an MMS message (page 153). You can also send it via infrared communication (page 316) or Bluetooth™ communication (page 311).
- ◆ **Lock Calendar:** Locks the calendar. To set or cancel the lock, enter your security code (page 57).
- ◆ **Holiday Setting:** Allows you to change the colour for displaying a specified date or day of the week.
- ◆ **Calendar View:** Switches the view between month, week, day and all appointments.

Alarms






Note







- If the alarm time arrives while the power is off, the power turns on automatically and the alarm sounds. However, note that if PIN1 Code Request (page 267) is set to **On**, calls and messages cannot be received until you enter the PIN1 code (page 43) to display the standby screen after stopping the alarm.
- When the mode settings (page 236) is set to Silent or Meeting and the alarm is set to **Off**, the alarm does not play.


You can set an alarm to play at a certain time.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Alarm** and press  (Select).
3. Select an alarm and press  (Select).
4. Select **On** and press  (Select).

The alarm settings screen appears.

5. Select an item and press .
 - ◆ **Alarm Name:** Allows you to enter an alarm name. After you enter a name, press .
 - ◆ **Alarm Time:** Allows you to enter an alarm time in accordance with the 24-hour system. After you enter a time, press  (OK).
 - ◆ **Alarm Tone:** Allows you to set the following items. Select an item and press . After setting the items, press  (Options) and select **Save**.
 - **Alarm Tone:** Allows you to set a sound preinstalled in your handset or a sound or video saved to Data Folder as the alarm tone. For details on how to set a tone, see from Step 5 of "Personalising the Ringtone" (page 238).
 - **Alarm Volume:** Allows you to set the alarm volume.
 - **Vibration:** Allows you to set the alarm vibration.

- ◆ **Repeat:** Allows you to set the alarm to repeat at a specified interval. Select one of the following items and press  (Select).
 - **Everyday:** Starts the alarm everyday.
 - **Weekdays:** Starts the alarm each day from Monday to Friday.
 - **Select Day:** Allows you to specify which days to start the alarm. Press  to remove a check mark, press  (Options) and select **OK**.
 - **Once:** Starts the alarm once only on a specified day. To specify a day, press  or  and press  (OK).
- ◆ **Snooze:** Allows you to set the snooze. If the snooze is set to **On**, the alarm plays in five minute intervals up to five times.



6. Press  (Options) after setting the items.

7. Select **Save** and press  (Select).

The  indicator appears in standby mode and the alarm is set.

Alarm Time

At a time set for an alarm, the alarm plays and the time-up screen appears. To stop the alarm, press any key.

If the snooze is set, select **Stop Snooze** in the information prompt (page 39) and press  (Select) and then press  (Yes) to stop the snooze.

Tip

If the time set for an alarm is reached during an incoming/outgoing voice call or video call, while taking a picture or recording a video or during infrared or other data communication, the alarm plays after the call, taking of a picture, recording of a video or communication ends.

Dictionary





You can look up the meaning of words in an electronic dictionary.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Dictionary** and press  (Select).
3. Select a dictionary and press  (Select).

Japanese: Allows you to input a Japanese word (kanji or reading) to look up its meaning in Japanese.

English-Japanese: Allows you to input an English word to look up its meaning in Japanese.

Japanese-English: Allows you to enter a Japanese word (kanji or reading) to look up its meaning in English.

4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Word Search** and press  (Select).
6. Enter a keyword and press .
7. Select a word and press .

Calculator




You can use your handset as a calculator.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Calculator** and press  (Select).

Follow the onscreen instructions to enter digits.


Press  to enter a decimal point and use  to switch between + and -.

Tip

To calculate the tax rate from the Calculator screen, press . To display the result of the tax rate calculation in red, press  once. To display the amount including tax in green, press  again.







Calculator Operations

You can perform the following operations if you press  (Options) from the Calculator screen.

- ◆ **=**: Repeats the last arithmetic operation.
- ◆ **Clear All**: Deletes the input value and data stored in memory.
- ◆ **MS**: Saves the input value to memory.
- ◆ **M+**: Adds the input value to the value stored in memory.
- ◆ **MR**: Displays the value stored in memory.
- ◆ **%**: Calculates the percentage.
- ◆ **1/X**: Calculates the reciprocal.
- ◆ **SQRT**: Calculates the square root.
- ◆ **Set Tax Rate**: Allows you to set the tax rate. To change the tax rate, enter a new rate and press  (OK).

Converter

You can set a currency exchange rate and then perform currency conversion calculations.


1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Converter** and press  (Select).
3. Select the Exchange rate input field and enter the exchange rate.
To enter a decimal point, press .
4. Select the Amount input field and enter an amount.
To enter a decimal point, press .
5. Press  (Result).
The conversion result appears.

Voice Recorder

Note




If a call is received during recording, the call takes priority and recording stops. All recording data is saved automatically. To prohibit the reception of calls during recording, set offline mode (page 256).

Tip

To stop recording and save all recording data automatically, press .

The voice recorder allows you to record sound and then save the recording data to the Recordings folder in the Melody&Music folder of Data Folder. Although the possible length of recording time depends on the amount of available memory space in Data Folder, the maximum recording time is 90 minutes for each recording.

Recording Sound

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Voice Recorder** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Record** and press  (Select).


The Recording screen appears.

4. Press  (Options).

The default storage place for recording data is handset memory. To switch the storage place to a memory card, select **Save sound to** and then select **Memory Card**.

5. Select **Record** and press  (Select).

Recording begins.

6. Press  (Pause) to pause recording.



To resume recording, press .

To save the recording data, press  (Save).



Tip

To play recording data saved to a memory card, press  (Options) and select **Memory Card** after Step 3.

Playing Recordings

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Voice Recorder** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Recordings** and press  (Select).

The contents of the Recordings folder in the Melody&Music folder of Data Folder appear.






4. Select a recording data and press  (Options).
5. Select **Play** and press  (Select).

Countdown Timer




Tip

The level of the alarm volume is that set for the Multimedia Volume setting (page 242) of the mode settings currently set. If the mode settings is set to **Silent**, no sound is emitted for the alarm. Your handset vibrates only.

You can set an alarm to notify you when a certain amount of time elapses. The alarm plays for approximately one minute.


1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Countdown Timer** and press  (Select).
3. Enter a start time (10 seconds to 60 minutes) and press  (OK).
4. Press  (Start).

The timer starts.






To stop the timer, press  (Stop). To restart the timer, press  (Restart). To reset the timer, press  (Reset) while the timer is stopped.

Notepad

Note

To edit or delete a memo, select the memo after Step 2 and press  (Options).

You can use your handset as a notepad for storing text input. You can also access the saved data during character input and editing. You can enter up 256 characters for each memo and store up to 20 memos in the notepad.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Notepad** and press  (Select).
3. Select a position and press .
4. Enter the contents of the memo and press .





Number Memo

Tip

- You can enter a total of up to 40 numbers and symbols (✕, #, +, -, P).
- Any number you enter is saved automatically after the call ends.
- If there are already five number memos, the oldest memo is deleted each time a new memo is saved.

You can use the keypad to take a memo of a phone number or other number during a voice or video call. After the call ends, you can save the number to the Contacts list or use it to create a message or make a call.

Taking a Memo of a Phone Number

1. Press keys on the keypad during a call.
 - To enter a pause (P), press  (Options) and select **Pause**.
 - To enter a hyphen, press  (Options) and select **Manual Hyphen**.
2. Press  (Options).
3. Select **Number Memo** and press  (Select).

The number memo is saved.



Viewing a Number Memo

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Number Memo** and press  (Select).



The saved number memos appear. You can select a phone number in a number memo and make a voice or video call or save the phone number to the Contacts list.

World Clock

Tip


If you press  (DST on) after Step 3, the time switches to Daylight Saving Time (DST) and the  indicator appears on the display.

World Clock Viewer allows you to check the date and local time in major cities around the world, as well as the time difference.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).

2. Select **World Clock** and press  (Select).

World Clock Viewer appears.

3. Use  to select a city.

The date, local time and time difference for the selected city appear.

The green longitude line on the map indicates the position of the city set for City 1.

The red longitude line indicates the position of the city set for City 2.






For details on changing the City 1 and City 2 settings, see “World Clock Setting” (page 54).

Backup

Note

Do not use a PC or other device to view or change a backup file in a memory card. The file may be damaged.






Backing Up Data to a Memory Card

1. Insert a memory card in the slot of your handset.
2. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Backup** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Backup** and press  (Select).
5. Select a data and press .

A check mark is added to the check box.

◆ **Contacts List:** Backs up the Contacts list.


◆ **Calendar:** Backs up the Calendar.

6. Press  (Options).
7. Select **Backup** and press  (Select).
8. Enter your security code (page 57).
A confirmation screen appears.
9. Press  (Yes).
A confirmation screen appears.
10. Press  (Yes) or  (No) in accordance with the confirmation screen.







Press  (Yes) to include pictures or press  (No) to not include pictures when backing up the Contacts list and press  (Yes) to include past appointments or press  (No) to not include past appointments when backing up the Calendar.


Offline mode is set and the data begins to be backed up to the memory card. When the backing up of data is complete, offline mode is cancelled.



Tip



To delete one or all backup files, press  (Options) after Step 5 and select **Delete** or **Delete All**.

Restoring Data from a Memory Card

1. Insert a memory card in the slot of your handset.
2. In standby mode, press , select **Tools** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Backup** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Restore** and press  (Select).
5. Select a data and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Contacts List:** Displays a list of Contacts list backup files.
 - ◆ **Calendar:** Displays a list of Calendar backup files.
6. Select a backup file and press .
7. Enter your security code (page 57).

A confirmation screen appears.
8. Press  (Yes).

A confirmation screen appears.
9. Press  (Yes) or  (No) in accordance with the confirmation screen.

Press  (Yes) to overwrite all the data in the restore destination and press  (No) to add the data.

Offline mode is set and the Contacts list or calendar begins to be imported to your handset. When the importing of data is complete, offline mode is cancelled.

Barcode





QR Code

The camera allows you to scan barcodes (QR codes). You can connect to a URL included in the scanned information or create a message to send to an address included in the scanned information. You can save up to ten scanned data items. However, this number depends on the amount of available memory space. When a barcode has been divided into data areas, you can scan up to 16 data areas consecutively.

Note

- Some barcodes cannot be scanned.
- The camera may not be able to scan a barcode that is dirty or in a shadow.

Tip

- If the scanned data begins with MAILTO:, press  after Step 4 to create an SMS/MMS message. If it begins with MEMORY:, you can save it to the Contacts list (page 82).
- If you select the text of a link (indicated by a blue underline) and press , you can make a call, create a message, save data to the Contacts list, connect to a URL, etc. If the scanned data contains image or sound data, you can display/play the data, save the data to Data Folder, etc.

Scanning a Barcode

Slide the macro switch to the macro mode position (page 144) before scanning a QR code.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Camera** and press  (Select).

2. Select **Scan Data** and press  (Select).

The scan QR code screen appears.


3. Frame a barcode in the main display.

To adjust the exposure, use . Press  to make the barcode darker and press  to make the barcode lighter.

4. Press .

Scanning begins.

The scanned data appears in the display. If the barcode has been divided, scan the other data areas.

To save the data, press  (Options) and select **Save**.

Using Location Information Included in QR Codes


1. Press  (Options) after you scan a QR code.

2. Select **NAVI** or **To My Locations** and press  (Select).




◆ **NAVI:** Starts the navigation application.

◆ **To My Locations:** Allows you to save the location information to the My Locations list (page 202).

Tip

To rename or delete scanned data, press  (Options) after Step 2.

Saved Barcodes

1. After Step 2 of “Scanning a Barcode” (page 301), press  (Options).
2. Select **Scanned Data List** and press  (Select).
3. Select a scanned data and press .

The barcode data appears.

For details on the operations you can perform while barcode data is displayed, see “Scanning a Barcode” (page 301).

Flashlight

Note

- Do not turn on the mobile light while it is close to anyone's eyes as doing so may damage the person's eyesight. Also, check the direction with which light will be emitted before turning on the mobile light.
- If the side key (▲) is set to another function (page 252), this function is unavailable.
- While the phone lock is activated (page 269), the Hold is set (page 276) or the countdown timer is activated (page 294), the mobile light cannot be turned on.

When the Flashlight function has been assigned to a side key (▲) in the shortcut settings (page 252), you can turn on the mobile light if you press and hold the side key (▲).

1. Press and hold a side key (▲).

The mobile light turns on and remains lit while you hold the side key (▲).

Sending Touch Tones

Send touch tones to use interactive voice response services and other types of touch-tone services.

Sending Individual Touch Tones

1. Press any of the  to ,  and  keys during a call.

Using the Pause (P) for Sending Touch Tones

The pause (P) allows you to send sequences of touch tones, each separated with a pause (P). The Contacts list is useful for storing sequences of touch tones for remotely operating your home answering machine and other devices. You can send up to 40 touch tones at one time.

Saving Touch Tones to the Contacts List

Example: Save the following three numbers.

Phone number: 03-123X-XXX3

Answering machine code: #7777

Answering machine playback code: #1

1. Save 03123XXX3P#7777P#1 as the phone number of an entry.

To enter a pause (P), press  (Options) and select **Pause**.

Sending Touch Tones

1. Open a Contacts list entry containing the touch tones.

2. Press .

A call is made to the phone number before the first “P.”

3. Press  (Tone).

The sequence of touch tones before the next “P” is sent.

Repeat this step until all the touch tones have been sent.

File Transfer & Synchronisation

You can use Bluetooth™, infrared or a USB cable to transfer data between your handset and other handsets, PCs and other devices. You can also use Vodafone Address Book to manage the Contacts list of your handset on a network server.

In This Chapter

- Bluetooth™
- Infrared
- USB Cable
- Vodafone Address Book

Note

The infrared communication and USB functions cannot be started or set during Bluetooth™ communication. If a USB cable is connected, Bluetooth™ communication ends.

You can transfer the data of the Contacts list, Calendar and Data Folder between your handset and Bluetooth™ compatible PCs and handsets. Bluetooth™ also allows you to use a wireless headset or an in-car device for handsfree calls. We recommend using Bluetooth™ while your handset and the other device are within 10 metres of each other. For details on the operating procedures of the other device, refer to the instruction manual for that device.







About Bluetooth™

Bluetooth™ is a technology that facilitates wireless communication between PCs and devices such as handsfree compatible devices.

About the Authentication PIN Code

The authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) is for connecting to other Bluetooth™ compatible devices. When registering a device, the same authentication PIN code needs to be entered for both the sending and receiving devices.

Activating Bluetooth™

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Connectivity** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Bluetooth** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Switch On/Off** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** and press  (Select).

The  indicator appears at the top of the display.

Note





A PIN code (4 to 16 digits) needs to be entered within approximately 30 seconds for security reasons.

Tip

To cancel this setting for a device you no longer want to trust, select **Off** in Step 4.

Registering a Bluetooth™ Enabled Device





Before establishing a Bluetooth™ connection, you need to search then register the Bluetooth™ enabled device. You can register up to 20 detected Bluetooth™ devices.

1. After Step 3 of “Activating Bluetooth™” (page 307), select **Paired Devices** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Search** and press  (Select).
3. Select a Bluetooth™ enabled device from the detected devices and press  (Select).
4. Enter a PIN code (4 to 16 digits) and press  (OK).

When the same PIN code is entered in the Bluetooth™ enabled device, that device is registered.




Setting a Bluetooth™ Compatible Device as a Trusted Device

If you set a registered Bluetooth™ compatible device as a trusted device, a confirmation screen is not displayed and a connection is established when a connection request is received from that device.





1. After Step 3 of “Activating Bluetooth™” (page 307), select **Paired Devices** and press  (Select).
2. Select a Bluetooth™ compatible device and press  (Select).
3. Select **Trust Device** and press  (Select).
4. Select **On** and press  (Select).

Displaying Details of a Registered Bluetooth™ Compatible Device




You can display the device name, device address, device class and supported profiles of a Bluetooth™ compatible device.

1. After Step 3 of “Activating Bluetooth™” (page 307), select **Paired Devices** and press  (Select).
2. Select a Bluetooth™ compatible device and press  (Select).
3. Select **Details** and press  (Select).

Changing the Name of a Registered Bluetooth™ Compatible Device

1. After Step 3 of “Activating Bluetooth™” (page 307), select **Paired Devices** and press  (Select).
2. Select a Bluetooth™ compatible device and press  (Select).
3. Select **Rename** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your security code (page 57).
5. Change the name and press .

Deleting a Registered Bluetooth™ Compatible Device

1. After Step 3 of “Activating Bluetooth™” (page 307), select **Paired Devices** and press  (Select).
2. Select a Bluetooth™ compatible device and press  (Select).
3. Select **Delete** and press  (Select).

Tip




You may still receive a connection request even if Visibility is set to **Hide My Phone**.

Response to Detection by Other Bluetooth™ Compatible Devices

1. After Step 3 of “Activating Bluetooth™” (page 307), select **My Phone ID** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Visibility** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Show My Phone** or **Hide My Phone** and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Show My Phone:** Allows your handset to be recognised when it is detected during a search by a Bluetooth™ compatible device in the vicinity.
 - ◆ **Hide My Phone:** Prevents your handset from being recognised when it is detected during a search by a Bluetooth™ compatible device in the vicinity.

Displaying Details of Your Handset

You can display the device name, device address, device class and supported profiles of your handset.

1. After Step 3 of “Activating Bluetooth™” (page 307), select **My Phone ID** and press  (Select).
2. Select **My Phone** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Details** and press  (Select).

Note

The following files cannot be sent.





- Files in V-appli, IC-appli, My Saved Pages and Templates of Data Folder
- Files without transfer permission

Tip



- To send the owner information of the Contacts list, select **Send My vCard** from the Phonebook menu (page 81) and then select **Via Bluetooth**.
- If the receiving device is not registered, select **Search** and then select the receiving device.

Changing the Name of Your Handset

You can change the name displayed on another Bluetooth™ compatible device when your handset is detected.

1. After Step 3 of “Activating Bluetooth™” (page 307), select **My Phone ID** and press  (Select).
2. Select **My Phone** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Rename** and press  (Select).
4. Enter your security code (page 57).
5. Change the name and press .

Using Bluetooth™ for Sending Data

1. Set up the other Bluetooth™ compatible device to receive data.
2. Select **Via Bluetooth** from the Options menu of a function and press  (Select).
To send one Contacts list entry, select **One**. To send all entries, select **All** (page 312).
Offline mode is set during the sending of data.
3. Select the receiving Bluetooth™ enabled device and press  (Select).
When the data is sent, offline mode is cancelled.

Tip


Files are saved to their appropriate locations by extensions.

Tip

- Depending on the settings of the Bluetooth™ compatible device, a screen for entering the authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code on your handset and the Bluetooth™ compatible device.
- If the receiving device is not registered, select **Search** and then select the receiving device.

Using Bluetooth™ for Receiving Data

When Bluetooth™ is enabled (page 307), you can receive data.

1. Press  (Yes) when a confirmation screen appears after a connection request is received from a Bluetooth™ compatible device in the vicinity.

Your handset is in offline mode while receiving data.









2. Select **Save** and press  (Select).

To reject the file, select **Reject**.

3. Select **To Phone Memory** or **To Memory Card** and press  (Select).

Sending All Contacts List Entries

You can send all the Contacts list entries of your handset to another Bluetooth™ compatible handset. Some devices may not be able to receive or properly display the entries.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Contacts List** and press  (Select).
3. Press  (Options).
4. Select **Send vCard** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Via Bluetooth** and press  (Select).
6. Select **All** and press  (Select).
7. Enter your security code (page 57).
Offline mode is set automatically.
8. Select the receiving device and press  (Select).

When the sending of the entries is complete, offline mode is cancelled automatically.

Tip

Depending on the settings of the Bluetooth™ compatible device, a screen for entering the authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code on your handset and the Bluetooth™ compatible device.

Note



If a call is received while a handsfree compatible device is connected, the ringtone for handsfree calls plays. When some Bluetooth™ compatible devices are used, the ringtone for handsfree calls may be heard from both your handset and the handsfree compatible device.

Tip




To perform handsfree communication, the handsfree compatible device needs to be registered. For details, see "Registering a Bluetooth™ Enabled Device" (page 308).

Receiving All Contacts List Entries

You can receive all the Contacts list entries from another Bluetooth™ compatible handset.




1. Press  (Yes) after a connection request is received.
Offline mode is set automatically.
2. Select **Save** or **Save as** and press  (Select).

Connecting to a Handsfree Compatible Device

1. After Step 3 of "Activating Bluetooth™" (page 307), select **Paired Devices** and press  (Select).
2. Select the handsfree compatible device and press  (Select).
3. Select **Connect** and press  (Select).



Setting Handsfree

You can set the mode for making and receiving calls while a handsfree compatible device is connected.

1. After Step 3 of “Activating Bluetooth™” (page 307), select **My Phone ID** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Handsfree Setting** and press  (Select).
3. Select a mode and press  (Select).
 - ◆ **Handsfree Mode:** Allows you to make and receive handsfree calls from your handset.
 - ◆ **Private Mode:** Allows you to make and receive regular calls from your handset.

Using Bluetooth™ for Dial-up Connections

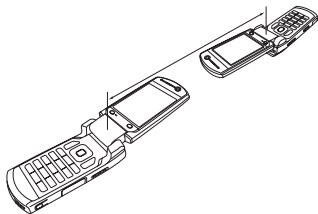
When Bluetooth™ is enabled, you can establish a dial-up connection.

1. Press  (Yes) when a confirmation screen appears after a connection request is received from a Bluetooth™ compatible device in the vicinity.
2. Enter a PIN code (4 to 16 digits) and press  (OK).

Tip


Depending on the settings of the Bluetooth™ compatible device, a screen for entering the authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code on your handset and the Bluetooth™ compatible device.

Infrared



Note

- You cannot use Bluetooth™ and USB functions/settings during infrared communication. If a USB cable is connected, infrared communication ends.
- You cannot send and receive data simultaneously.

You can use infrared to exchange the Calendar data of your handset, Contacts list entries of your handset, memory card or USIM card, pictures/videos taken or recorded with the camera and Data Folder data that can be forwarded with an infrared compatible handset, PC or other device. You can also restore or backup of Data Folder data. The  indicator appears at the top of the display during transfer. To transfer data between your handset and a PC, the supplied PC management software My Mobile needs to be installed on the PC. The infrared function of your handset complies with IrMC 1.1. As shown in the illustration on the left, bring your handset and an infrared compatible device to within 20 centimetres of each other and point both infrared ports directly towards each other. Do not place an object between them. For details on the operating procedures of the other device, refer to the instruction manual for that device.

About the Authentication Password

The authentication password (4 digits) is for sending and receiving all Contacts list entries by infrared communication. When sending or receiving all entries, the same authentication password needs to be entered for both the sending and receiving devices.

Note


The following files cannot be sent.

- Files in V-appli, IC-appli, My Saved Pages and Templates of Data Folder
- Files without transfer permission








Tip

The save locations of data are determined by the extensions.

Using Infrared for Sending Data

1. Set up the other infrared compatible device to receive data.
2. Select **Via Infrared** from the Options menu of a function and press  (Select).
To send one Contacts list entry, select **One**. To send all entries, select **All** (page 317).
Offline mode is set during the sending of data.
When the sending of data is complete, offline mode is cancelled.

Using Infrared for Receiving Data

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Connectivity** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Infrared** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Incoming Data** and press  (Select).
5. Enter your security code (page 57).
Your handset is ready to receive data.
6. Send the data from the other handset or the PC.
7. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
To reject file reception, select **Reject**.
8. Select **To Phone Memory** or **To Memory Card** and press  (Select).

Tip








Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

Tip

Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

Sending All Contacts List Entries

You can send all the Contacts list entries of your handset to another infrared compatible handset. Some devices may not be able to receive or properly display the entries.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Contacts List** and press  (Select).
3. Press  (Options).
4. Select **Send vCard** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Via Infrared** and press  (Select).
6. Select **All** and press  (Select).
7. Enter your security code (page 57).

Offline mode is set automatically.

8. Enter your authentication password (page 315).

When the sending of the entries is complete, offline mode is cancelled automatically.

Receiving All Contacts List Entries

You can receive all the Contacts list entries from another infrared compatible handset.

1. After Step 4 of “Using Infrared for Receiving Data” (page 316), enter your security code (page 57).

Your handset enters an infrared reception state and waits for data from the sending device.

2. Enter your authentication password (page 315).
3. Select **Save** or **Save as** and press  (Select).

Using Infrared for Backing Up Data

You can back up files and folders in Pictures, Videos, Melody&Music and Other Files of Data Folder to a PC. Files without transfer permission cannot be backed up.







1. After Step 5 of "Using Infrared for Receiving Data" (page 316), follow the instructions on the PC to back up data from your handset to the PC.

Using Infrared for Restoring Data

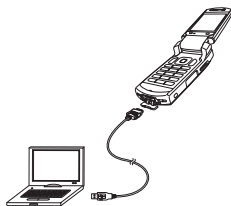
You can restore Pictures, Videos, Melody&Music and Other Files of Data Folder saved on a PC to your handset.

1. After Step 5 of "Using Infrared for Receiving Data" (page 316), follow the instructions on the PC to restore data from the PC to your handset.

Using Infrared for Dial-up Connections

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Connectivity** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Infrared** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Dial-up Connection** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** and press  (Select).

USB Cable



Use a USB cable to connect your handset to a PC and then exchange Contacts list, Calendar and Data Folder files. You can also use the supplied music transfer software to transfer music files and playlists from a PC to the memory card of your handset. Before connecting the USB cable, install the USB host driver and My Mobile (included in the supplied CD-ROM) on your PC. This function supports USB 1.1 and USB 2.0. For details on the PC operating environment required to use this function, refer to My Mobile Quick Guide (included in the supplied CD-ROM).

Note

- When using a USB cable to connect your handset to a PC, be sure to directly insert the plug of the USB cable into the USB port of the PC.
- The Bluetooth™ communication and infrared communication cannot be started or set during USB functions.

Transferring Music from a PC to a Memory Card

Transfer music files and playlists from a PC to a memory card. Before connecting the USB cable, install the music transfer software (included in the supplied CD-ROM) on your PC. All music files transferred to your handset using the music transfer software are stored in the Beat Engine Box of the memory card. You can access the Beat Engine Box from the Music tab (page 100) of the Media Player menu.

Using Music Transfer Mode to Connect to a PC

To transfer music files from a PC to your handset, you need to use music transfer mode to establish a connection between the PC and your handset.

1. Open your handset, display the standby screen and use the USB cable to connect your handset to the PC.

A confirmation screen for switching to music transfer mode appears.

2. Press  (Yes).

Your handset switches to music transfer mode, then connects to the PC.

Note

- Offline mode (page 256) is set while your handset is in music transfer mode.
- In the following cases, your handset does not switch to music transfer mode when you connect it to a PC via a USB cable.
 - The phone lock is activated.
 - Your handset is closed.
 - The display setting of the confirmation screen (page 322) is set to **Do not Display**.
- You can also switch to music transfer mode from the main menu (page 321).

Note






- Connect the PC and your handset by USB cable before you switch to music transfer mode.
- Offline mode (page 256) is set while your handset is in music transfer mode.

Note

- Offline mode (page 256) is set during updating.
- This function cannot be used if the battery level is low, except during charging.

Switching to Music Transfer Mode from the Main Menu

You can also switch to music transfer mode from the main menu.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (select).
2. Select **Connectivity** and press  (Select).
3. Select **USB** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Music Transfer**  (Select).




Your handset switches to music transfer mode.

Transferring Music Files

After you use music transfer mode to establish a connection between the PC and your handset (page 320), use the music transfer software to transfer music files. When the transfer is complete, disconnect your handset from the PC. For details on operating the PC or the music transfer software, refer to the corresponding manual.

Updating Music File Information

You can update the file management information of music files transferred from a PC.

1. Display the Music tab (page 100) of the Media Player menu, select **Beat Engine Box** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Update List** and press  (Select).
A confirmation screen appears.
3. Press  (Yes).

The music file information is updated.

Note

If **Do not Display** is set for the display setting of the confirmation screen for switching to music transfer mode, the screen does not appear even if a USB cable is connected to your handset from standby mode. You can also switch to music transfer mode from the main menu (page 321).







Note

The following files cannot be sent.

- Files in V-appli, My Saved Pages and Templates of Data Folder
- Files without transfer permission






Setting Display of the Music Transfer Mode Confirmation Screen

You can set whether to display the confirmation screen for switching to music transfer mode (page 320).

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Connectivity** and press  (Select).
3. Select **USB** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Confirmation** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Display** or **Do not Display** and press  (Select).

Using a USB Cable for Sending Data

You can send the data of the Contacts list, Calendar and Data Folder.

1. Follow the procedure below to connect your handset and a PC with a USB cable.
 - 1) Open the external connector cover of your handset.
 - 2) Insert the plug of the USB cable into the external connector.
 - 3) Connect the USB cable to the USB port of the PC.
2. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Connectivity** and press  (Select).
4. Select **USB** and press  (Select).
5. Select **Data Transfer** and press  (Select).
6. Enter your security code (page 57).

Offline mode is set. Your handset is ready to send data.
7. Follow the instructions on the PC to receive data from your handset to the PC.

Note

Files that cannot be transferred are not backed up.

Note

- All the data may not be able to be restored from some backup files.
- All the data of the restore destination is overwritten.

Using a USB Cable for Receiving Data

You can receive data to the Contacts list, Calendar and Data Folder.

1. After Step 6 of “Using a USB Cable for Sending Data” (page 322), follow the instructions on the PC to send data from the PC to your handset.

Using a USB Cable for Backing Up Data

You can back up files and folders in Pictures, Videos, Melody&Music and Other Files of Data Folder.

1. After Step 6 of “Using a USB Cable for Sending Data” (page 322), follow the instructions on the PC to back up data from your handset to the PC.

You may need to enter your security code (page 57) on your handset.

Using a USB Cable for Restoring Data

You can restore Pictures, Videos, Melody&Music and Other Files of Data Folder saved on a PC to your handset.

1. After Step 6 of “Using a USB Cable for Sending Data” (page 322), follow the instructions on the PC to restore data from the PC to your handset.

You may need to enter your security code (page 57) on your handset.

Using a USB Cable for Dial-up Connections







You can use a USB cable to connect your handset to a PC and then access the Internet, etc. For details on the configuration/operation of the PC modem, refer to the instruction manual for the PC.

Note

- Charging is not possible while your handset is turned off.
- Charging may not be possible depending on the connection settings of the PC.

Using a USB Cable for Charging

While your handset is on, you can charge the battery pack if you connect your handset and a PC using a USB cable.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Settings** and press  (Select).
2. Select **Connectivity** and press  (Select).
3. Select **USB** and press  (Select).
4. Select **Battery Charge** and press  (Select).
5. Select **On** and press  (Select).

Vodafone Address Book

Use this service to backup and manage your Contacts list on Data Synchronisation Server.

Available Features:

Feature	Description
Backup Contacts List	Backup your Contacts list to Data Synchronisation Server. Choose from three backup methods (page 334).
Read Contacts List	After upgrading your handset, transfer Contacts list from the server to your new handset. Choose from three read methods (page 334).
Edit Contacts List	From a PC, edit contacts stored on the server.
Import/Export Contacts List	Download Contacts list from the server to a PC or upload from a PC to the server.
Set Birthday Notification	If the birthday is entered in a contact, a message is sent to notify you of an approaching birthday.

Subscription

- A separate subscription is required to use Vodafone Address Book. Apply for the service at your nearest Vodafone Shop or Vodafone General Information (page 360).
- A monthly fee is charged for using Vodafone Address Book.
- Depending on the handset model you are using, the Contacts list on the server may be deleted when you upgrade your handset.
- All the Contacts list entries on the server are deleted when you cancel your subscription to Vodafone Address Book.

Notes on Usage

- If you forget your password, you can perform the following procedure to check your password.

☐ (Ⓢ) → **My Vodafone** → 利用状況の確認 → ホータフォンアドレスブック 編集用パスワード 確認 → オリジナルメール 設定・各種メール 設定

For the following procedure, follow the onscreen instructions.

- If synchronisation fails because of a weak signal or the battery running out of power, resolve the problem and try again. If the synchronisation type is set to **Normal**, **Client Update** or **Server Update**, a normal type synchronisation is performed automatically.
- If **Normal**, **Client Update** or **Backup** is set as the synchronisation type after deleting all Contacts list entries on your handset, the Contacts list entries on the server are deleted when the synchronisation is performed. Furthermore, if **Normal**, **Server Update** or **Restore** is set as the synchronisation type after deleting all Contacts list entries on the server, the Contacts list entries on your handset are deleted when the synchronisation is performed.
- If a synchronisation is performed after overwriting the Contacts list via infrared communication or USB, your handset may still contain the Contacts list information that was in your handset prior to the overwrite.

- The Contacts list items Category, Picture, and Sound/Secret are not applicable to synchronisation. If a restore type synchronisation is performed, the settings information for all these items will also be deleted from your handset.
- Pictographs cannot be saved to the Contacts list of your handset. If a synchronisation is performed when there are pictographs in the Contacts list on the server, each pictograph is replaced with a double-byte space when the entries are saved to your handset.
- Vodafone and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any loss of Contacts list information on your handset or the server resulting from cancellation of your subscription or an error occurring during synchronisation.
- Performing synchronisation frequently is recommended to maintain consistency between the Contacts lists on your handset and the server. Furthermore, synchronisation may take longer than usual after extensive editing (modifications, additions, deletions, etc.) of the Contact list on your handset or the server.













Note

- If you do not receive a message, refer to the guidance on forgotten passwords (page 326).
- The user name is your phone number.







Setting Your User Name & Password

A user name (User ID) and password need to be set to use Vodafone Address Book. You are notified of your user name and password by mail (SMS) after you complete your subscription to Vodafone Address Book.

Setting Your User Name

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **VF Address Book** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Start Sync.** and press  (Select).
4. Select **VF Address Book** and press  (Options).
5. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
6. Select **Username** and press  (Options).
7. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
8. Enter your user name (your phone number) and press .
9. Press  (Options).
10. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
11. Press  (Yes).

Setting Your Password

1. After Step 5 of “Setting Your User Name” (page 328), select **Password** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
3. Enter your password and press  (OK).
4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
6. Press  (Yes).

Note







- A network connection is established when you start synchronisation. Communication fees apply while you are connected to the network. The connection is disconnected automatically after synchronisation is complete.
- A synchronisation cannot be performed when the following are set.
 - Phonebook Lock (page 97)
 - Phone Lock (page 269)
 - Key Guard (page 275)

Tip

- A normal type synchronisation is performed the first time regardless of the setting (page 334).
- Unless you change the synchronisation type setting, the default setting (**Normal**) will be used for synchronisation.

Synchronising the Contacts List







Before synchronising your Contacts list, preset the user name and password for the server profile (page 328).

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
 2. Select **VF Address Book** and press  (Select).
 3. Select **Start Sync.** and press  (Select).
 4. Select **VF Address Book** and press .
- A confirmation screen appears.
5. Press  (Yes).

For the following procedure, follow the onscreen instructions.



Editing a Server Profile

Checking Server Profile Settings

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **VF Address Book** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Start Sync.** and press  (Select).
4. Select a server profile and press  (Options).
5. Select **View** and press  (Select).







Creating a Server Profile

You can add a new server profile. However, new server profiles currently be used to synchronise the Contacts list.

1. After Step 3 of “Checking Server Profile Settings” (above), press  (Options).
2. Select **Add** and press  (Select).

Renaming a Server Profile

You can rename a server profile.

1. After Step 5 of “Setting Your User Name” (page 328), select **Rename** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
3. Enter a server profile name and press .
4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
6. Press  (Yes).

Setting Your User Name






For details on setting your user name, see page 328.

Setting Your Password

For details on setting your password, see page 329.




Setting a Server URL

You can change a server URL.




1. After Step 5 of “Setting Your User Name” (page 328), select **URL** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
3. Enter a server URL and press .
4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
6. Press  (Yes).

Setting the Synchronisation Mode

Select automatic or manual for synchronisation mode. If you select **Automatic**, synchronisation is performed regularly.

1. After Step 5 of "Setting Your User Name" (page 328), select **Sync. Mode** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
3. Select a synchronisation mode and press  (Select).

If you select **Automatic**, set Sync. Cycle. Select **Daily**, **Weekly** or **Monthly** and then set the start time, day and start time, or date and start time.

4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
6. Press  (Yes).

Tip







- A backup type synchronisation is recommended after extensive editing (modifications, additions, deletions, etc.) of Contacts list entries on your handset.
- A restore type synchronisation is recommended after extensive editing (modifications, additions, deletions, etc.) of Contacts list entries on the server.

Synchronisation Type

Select from one of the following synchronisation types.







Synchronisation Type	Description	Precautions
Normal (Two-way Synchronisation)	Update handset and server information simultaneously.	If the same file has been updated on both your handset and the server, the Contacts list on the server is given priority (the updated Contacts list information on the server is reflected in the Contacts list on your handset).
Client Update (One-way Synchronisation)	Update the Server Contacts list to reflect changes made to your handset Contacts.	Updates made on the server Contacts are not reflected to handset Contacts.
Server Update (One-way Synchronisation)	Updates made to the server Contacts is reflected to your handset Contacts.	Updates made on the handset Contacts are not reflected to the server Contacts.
Backup	Server Contacts list is overwritten with handset Contacts list (server Contacts list is deleted).	Note that all Contacts list entries on the server are deleted.

Synchronisation Type	Description	Precautions
Restore	Deletes all Contacts list entries on your handset and reads all the Contacts list entries on the server (reflected in Contacts list on your handset). However, your handset cannot read more than 500 entries (maximum number of entries storable on your handset). The entries are read to the Contacts list on your handset in order of date (earliest to latest) of editing in the Contacts list on the server.	Note that all Contacts list entries on your handset are deleted. Furthermore, all Contacts list items that are not applicable to synchronisation (page 327) become unset.

1. After Step 5 of "Setting Your User Name" (page 328), select **Sync. Type** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
3. Select a synchronisation type and press  (Select).
4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
6. Press  (Yes).










Displaying & Hiding the Confirmation Screen

You can set whether to display a confirmation screen when synchronisation begins.

1. After Step 5 of "Setting Your User Name" (page 328), select **Confirmation** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Always On** or **Off** and press  (Select).
4. Press  (Options).
5. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
6. Press  (Yes).










Database Settings

If you set Synchronisation to **Disable**, a synchronisation is not performed.








1. After Step 5 of "Setting Your User Name" (page 328), select **Database Settings** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
3. Select an item and press  (Select).
4. Enter/select information.
For each item, press  or  (OK) and set the information.
5. Press  (Back).
6. Press  (Options) after setting the items.
7. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
8. Press  (Yes).

Network Settings


You can set the user name and password for establishing a network connection.

1. After Step 5 of "Setting Your User Name" (page 328), select **Network Settings** and press  (Options).
2. Select **Edit** and press  (Select).
3. Select an item and press  (Select).
4. Enter/select information.
For each item, press  or  (OK) and set the information.
5. Press  (Back).
6. Press  (Options) after setting the items.
7. Select **Save** and press  (Select).
8. Press  (Yes).







Deleting a Server Profile

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **VF Address Book** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Start Sync.** and press  (Select).
4. Select a server profile and press  (Options).
5. Select **Delete** and press  (Select).
A confirmation screen appears.
6. Press  (Yes).



Tip

To delete a synchronisation log, select it after Step 3, press  (Options) and select **Delete**.

Copying a Server Profile


1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **VF Address Book** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Start Sync.** and press  (Select).
4. Select a server profile and press  (Options).
5. Select **Copy** and press  (Select).

Renaming Your Handset

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **VF Address Book** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Phone Name** and press  (Select).
4. Enter a handset name and press .

Checking the Synchronisation Logs

You can view the synchronisation logs.

1. In standby mode, press , select **Phonebook** and press  (Select).
2. Select **VF Address Book** and press  (Select).
3. Select **Sync. Log** and press  (Select).
4. Select a synchronisation log and press .

Appendix

In This Chapter

- **Default Settings**
- **Troubleshooting**
- **Storage Capacity**
- **Main Specifications**
- **Glossary**
- **Index**
- **Warranty & After Sales Service**
- **Customer Service**





Default Settings

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Entertainment	V-appli	Screensavers: Off, Set Time (Start Time: 3 sec, Duration: No Timeout), Priority Settings (Voice Calls: Voice Calls, Video Calls: Video Calls, Messages: Messages, Alarms: Alarms), Backlight (Backlight: Same as Phone, Blinking: On), Volume: Level 3, Vibration: On	185-190
	Media Player	Play Mode: All, Surround: Off, Equalizer: Flat, Voice Cancel: Off, Volume: Level 6, Screen Display: Normal Screen (when up to H144×W176)/Full Screen (when larger than H144×W176)	100-108
	Vodafone live! CAST	Information: One item	192-196
Browser Settings		Text Browser (Image: Show, Sound: Unmute), Font Size: Standard, Cookie Settings: On, Manufacture No.: Off, Auto Launch: Off, Location Property: Ask every time, Encoding Type: Auto	177-184
Vodafone live! NAVI		Quick Positioning: Off, URL Settings: ゼンリンいつもナビ (http://mobile.its-mo.com/MapToLink/p2), NAVI Application: ゼンリンいつもナビ, Positioning Lock: Off	198-207
Camera	Camera Settings	Picture Quality: Fine, Picture Size (Digital Camera: W2048×H1536, Mobile Camera: W240×H320), Picture Effects: Off, Preview: On, Date Stamp: Off, Grid: Off, Flicker Adjustment: 50 Hz, File Name: Date&Time, Shutter Sound: Pattern 1, Keypad Shortcut: On, Camera Mode: Mobile Camera, Self-view: Off, Night Mode: Off, Multi Shots: Off, Add Frame: Off, Save Image to: Phone Memory, Delay Timer: Off, Mobile Light: Off, White Balance: Auto, Colour Control: Neutral Colour, Exposure Control: ±0.0EV	125-136, 141-149




Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Camera	Video Settings	Video Quality: Normal, Effects: Off, Preview: On, Screen Display: Normal, Controller Display: On, Flicker Adjustment: 50 Hz, File Name: Date&Time, Start/End Sounds: Pattern 1, Keypad Shortcut: On, Record Mode: For MMS, Self-view: Off, Voice Record: On, Save Video to: Phone Memory, Delay Timer: Off, Mobile Light: Off, White Balance: Auto, Colour Control: Neutral Colour, Exposure Control: $\pm 0.0\text{EV}$, Video Encode: MPEG4 (Japan)	137-149
	Scan Data	Exposure Control: $\pm 0.0\text{EV}$	300-302
Messaging	Receiving Settings (MMS)	Retrieve Mode (Home Network: Deferred, Roaming Network: Deferred), Auto-extract File (Picture: On, Sound: On), Reply for Delivery: On, Anonymous Msg.: Reject	151-175
	Sending Settings (MMS)	Delivery Report: Off, Delivery Time: Immediate, Expiry Time: Off, MMS Signature: No Text, MMS Priority: Normal	
	Default Recipient (MMS)	Unset	
	SMS Settings	Delivery Report: Off, SMS Signature: No Text	
	3D Pict. Settings	Auto Play: Unread Only, Colour Settings: Random	
	Common Settings	Reply Settings: Always Ask, Display Font Size: Standard, Page Scroll: 1 Line	
	Received Msgs.	Auto-delete: Off	
	Sent Messages	Auto-delete: On	
Data Folder		Thumbnail View (Pictures and Videos folders only)	220-234

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Tools	Calendar	Appointment: Unset, Alarm (Alarm: Off, Alarm Tone: Pattern 1, Alarm Volume: Level 3, Vibration: Pattern 1), Lock Calendar: Off, Holiday Settings (Sunday: Red, Weekdays: Black, Saturday: Blue)	283-286
	Alarm	Alarm: Off, Alarm Tone: Pattern 1, Alarm Volume: Level 3, Vibration: Pattern 1, Repeat: Everyday, Snooze: Off	287-288
	IC-appli	Priority Settings (Voice Calls: Voice Calls, Video Calls: Video Calls, Messages: Messages, Alarms: Alarms), Backlight (Backlight: Same as Phone, Blinking: On), Volume: Level 3, Vibration: On	209-218
	Dictionary	—	289
	Calculator	Set Tax Rate: 5%	290
	Converter	Exchange rate: 0	291
	Voice Recorder	Save sound to: Phone Memory	292-293
	Countdown Timer	—	294
	Notepad	—	295
	Number Memo	—	296
	World Clock	DST on/off: DSToff	297
	Backup	—	298-299
Phonebook		My Details: Owner phone number only, Speed Calling: Unset, Default Storage: Phone Memory, Scroll Speed: Fast, Phonebook Lock: Off, Search Mode: List View, VF Address Book (Phone Name: No Entry)	81-98

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Mode Settings	Normal (Default)	Ringtone Volume: Level 3, Assign Ringtone: Pattern 1, Ringtone Duration: 5 sec, Vibration: Off, Keypad Volume: Level 3, Keypad Tones: Original 1, Sound Effects Vol. (Start Up: Level 2, Shut Down: Level 2, Phone Open: Silent, Phone Closed: Silent, Error: Level 2), Sound Effects: Preset Pattern, Multimedia Volume: Level 3, Battery Alarm: On	236-243
	Silent	Vibration: On, Alarm: Off	
	Car	Ringtone Volume: Level 5, Assign Ringtone: Pattern 1, Ringtone Duration: 5 sec, Vibration: Off, Keypad Volume: Level 3, Keypad Tones: Original 1, Sound Effects Vol. (Start Up: Level 3, Shut Down: Level 3, Phone Open: Silent, Phone Closed: Silent, Error: Level 3), Sound Effects: Preset Pattern, Multimedia Volume: Level 5, Battery Alarm: On	
	Meeting	Ringtone Volume: Silent, Assign Ringtone: Pattern 1, Ringtone Duration: 5 sec, Vibration: Off, Keypad Volume: Silent, Keypad Tones: Original 1, Sound Effects Vol.: Silent, Sound Effects: Preset Pattern, Multimedia Volume: Silent, Battery Alarm: On, Alarm: On	
Sound Settings		Same as for Normal above	
Display Settings	Main Display	Wallpaper: Custom Screens, Custom Screens: Cyber Space, Clock Type Display: 1-line Digital, Backlight Settings (Brightness: Bright, Lighting Time: 15 sec), Operator Name: On, Power Saving: 1 min, Cell Information: Off	244-245, 247, 249-250
	External Display	Clock Type Display: Normal, Backlight Settings (Lighting Time: 15 sec), Contrast: Level 0	248-249, 251
Phone Settings	Date&Time	12 hour/24 hour: 24 hour	53, 248
	World Clock	City 1: Tokyo, City 2: Tokyo, Set as Main City: City 1, DST on/off: Off	54-55
	言語選択	Automatic	52





Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Phone Settings	Shortcuts	Side Up Key: NAVI, Navigation Keys (): Shortcut Menu, (): Phonebook, (): Dialed Numbers, (): Received Calls	252-253
	Words List	Unset	80
	External Light	Notification (Missed Calls: Red, Messages: Blue, Voice Mail: Green), Incoming (Voice Call: Purple, Video Call: Purple, Messaging: Aqua)	254-255
	Offline Mode	Off	256
	AV Output	NTSC	225-226
Call Settings	Answerphone	Setting: Off, Ringing Duration: 6 sec	257-258
	Voice Call	Caller Details (Incoming Picture: Preset Picture, Caller Picture: On, Caller Info: On), Auto Answer: Off, Mute: Off, Earphone Call: Off, Call Priority: Enable, International Call (International Code: 0046010), Prefix Settings (Auto Prefix: Off, Hide to Missed Call: Off)	246, 258-264
	Video Call	Outgoing Video: Camera Monitored, Image Quality: Standard Mode, Caller Details (Incoming Picture: Preset Picture, Caller Picture: On, Caller Info: On), Zoom: Normal (×1), Auto Answer: Off, Mute: Off, Loud Speaker: On, Backlight: On, Hold Guidance: Preset Picture, Appearance Check: On	117-119, 246, 259
	Common Settings	Earpiece Volume: Level 3, Speaker Volume: Level 3, Open to Answer: Off, Any Key Answer: Off	265-266
Media Player Set		Priority Setting: Incoming Call, Backlight: Always On	107
Security Settings	PIN1 Code Request	Off	267-268
	Change PIN1	—	
	Change PIN2	—	








Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Security Settings	Change Password	—	268
	Phone Lock	Phone Closed: Off, Power Saving: Off, Power On: Off	269
	Reject Calls	Hidden: Off, Public Phone: Off, Unavailable: Off, Unknown: Off, Select Contact: Off (Unset)	270-271
	Reject Addresses	Off (Unset)	272
	Secret Mode	Off	273
	Fixed Dialling No.	Off (Unset)	273-274
IC Card Settings	IC Card Lock	Off	215
	Remote Lock	Call Remote Lock: Off, Count for Lock: 3 times, Phone No. to Lock: Unset	215-217
	Interface Settings	Browser: On, Messaging: On, Vibration: On, Notification: On, V-appli: On	218
Memory Settings	Phone Memory	—	277
	Memory Card	—	229-230
Network Settings		Select Network: Automatic, System Mode: UMTS Only	49-51
Connectivity	Infrared	Dial-up Connection: Off	315-318
	Bluetooth™	Switch On/Off: Off, Paired Devices (Trust Device: Off), My Phone ID (Visibility: Show My Phone, My Phone: Vodafone/904T, Handsfree Setting: Handsfree Mode)	307-314
	USB	Confirmation: Display, Battery Charge: On	319-324
	Vodafone Address Book	Phone Name: No Entry	325-338

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Optional Services	Call Diverting	—	68-69
	Voicemail	—	66-67
	Call Waiting	—	72-73
	Multiparty Call	—	74
	Call Barring	—	70-71
Call Log	Dialled Numbers	—	62
	Missed Calls	—	
	Received Calls	—	
	Call Timers	Last Call Time: 000:00:00, All Calls Time: 000:00:00	63
	Call Costs	Last Call: 0Yen, All Calls: 0Yen, Cost Unit (Unit: Yen, Rate: 1.0000000), Call Cost Display: Off	64-65
	Data Counter	Last Data: 0Kbytes, All Data: 0Kbytes	65
Text Entry (Japanese Entry)		Prediction: On, Input Method: Standard, Font Size: Large, Line Feed: On, Keys to Convert: 4 Direction Keys, Clipboard: Unset	75-80
Shortcut Menu		Thumbnail View, A function assigned (IC Card Lock)	281
Press and hold 	Key Guard	Unset	275
Press and hold 	Hold Setting	Unset	276
Press and hold 	Silent	Unset	236

*This operation is for when your handset is closed.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot turn the power on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the battery pack inserted properly (page 45)? Is the battery charged (pages 35, 38, 46)?
Cannot charge the battery.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is there dust on the connections and contacts of the rapid charger, handset or battery pack? Clean the connections and contacts with a dry cotton swab, etc.
Cannot operate the handset normally after turning it on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does the PIN1 Entry screen appear? PIN1 Code Request (page 267) is set to On. Enter your PIN1 code. Does the  indicator or "Phone Lock" appear on the display? The phone lock (page 269) is activated. Enter your security code. Does "Please insert valid USIM card." appear on the display? The USIM card was not read properly. Turn the power off and make sure the USIM card is inserted properly.
Cannot establish a connection for voice and video calls or use mail and Web functions.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does the  indicator appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where a signal cannot reach your handset? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset. Does the  indicator appear on the display? Are you using the handset overseas? To use the handset overseas, you need to change the Select Network and System Mode settings (page 51). Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (pages 31, 32) of your handset? Does the  indicator or "Offline Mode" appear on the display? Cancel offline mode (page 256).
Cannot make voice and video calls.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Did you dial the whole phone number starting from the area code? Is Fixed Dialling Numbers (page 273) set? Is Call Barring (page 70) set?

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot receive voice and video calls.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is Reject Calls (page 270) set? • Is Voicemail (page 66) or Call Diverting (page 68) set to All Calls? • Is Call Barring (page 70) set?
Cannot send messages.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is Fixed Dialling Numbers (page 273) set? • Is Call Barring (page 70) set?
Cannot receive messages.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is Reject Addresses (page 272) set? • Is Call Barring (page 70) set?
Calls are interrupted or disconnected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does the  indicator appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where a signal cannot reach your handset? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset. • Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (pages 31, 32) of your handset?
The handset does not respond to key presses.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does the  indicator or "Phone Lock" appear on the display? The phone lock (page 269) is activated. Enter your security code. • Does the  indicator appear on the display? The key guard is set (page 275). Press and hold  to cancel the key guard. • Was your handset closed and the  indicator displayed on the external display? The hold is activated (page 276). Press and hold  while your handset is closed.
Cannot use the FeliCa function.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does the  indicator or "IC Card Lock" appear on the display? Cancel the IC card lock (page 215).

Storage Capacity

Data Folder

Data Folder	Up to approximately 40 MB*
--------------------	----------------------------

*The V-appli Library shares its memory with Data Folder.

Mail

Mailbox*	Up to approximately 7 MB
Received Msgs.	Up to 1,000 SMS messages Up to 600 MMS messages
Sent Messages	Up to 500 SMS messages Up to 150 MMS messages
Combination of Drafts, Unsent Messages and Templates	Up to 100 SMS messages Up to 50 MMS messages

*Received Msgs., Sent Messages, Drafts, Unsent Messages and Templates of Mailbox share the same memory.

Web

Cache	Up to approximately 600 KB
Bookmarks	Up to 200 bookmarks
History (URL)	Up to 300 URLs

Main Specifications

904T

Frequency Range : 3G (UMTS) 2100 1920-2170 MHz
: GSM 900 880-960 MHz
: DCS 1800 1710-1880 MHz
: PCS 1900 1850-1990 MHz

Continuous Talk Time : Within 3G (UMTS) area Approx. 180 min.
: Video call Approx. 110 min.
: Within GSM area Approx. 290 min.

Continuous Standby Time : Within 3G (UMTS) area Approx. 400 hrs.
: Within GSM area Approx. 270 hrs.

Charging Time : Approx. 120 min.

Dimensions when closed (W×H×D) : Approx. 50×112×26 mm
(internal antenna portion: approx. 32 mm)

Maximum Output : 3G (UMTS) 2100 Class 3 0.25 W
: GSM 900 Class 4 2 W
: DCS 1800 Class 1 1 W
: PCS 1900 Class 1 1 W

Weight : Approx. 146g (when the battery pack is attached)

- The values above were calculated with the battery pack attached.
- The continuous talk time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is in a stationary state and a new fully charged battery pack is attached.
- The continuous standby time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is closed and the external display is viewable, the handset is in a stationary state, a new fully charged battery pack is attached and there are no calls made/received or operations performed. If the handset

is in a location outside the service area or where it is difficult to receive a signal (in a building, vehicle, bag, etc.), this time may be reduced by up to half. This time may also be affected by other factors such as the operating environment (battery state, temperature, etc.). The value for continuous standby time is when the system mode was set to **UMTS Only**.

- The operating time of the battery was calculated when a stable signal was received constantly. However, this time is reduced by up to half if the handset is used in a location where the signal is weak or the handset is left in standby mode when it is outside the service area.
Repeated charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time. If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery pack.
- If the mobile light is used frequently for taking pictures and recording videos or as a flashlight, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- When a V-appli is activated, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become significantly shorter.
- If the handset is used with the main display and external display illuminated frequently (for Vodafone live! use, etc.), the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- Note that the LCD display may have defective pixels (dead or stuck pixels).

Rapid Charger

Input Voltage : 100 to 240 V AC
: 50/60 Hz

Charging Temperature Range : 5 to 35°C

Glossary

Term	Definition
3G (UMTS)	A third generation (3G) mobile communication system. UMTS is the 3G mobile communication system of Europe.
GSM	A wireless system for digital handsets. GSM is the predominant system in Europe and Asia, and is the world's most widely used system.
GPRS	A data transmission technique used for GSM mobile phone networks. It enables the high-speed transfer of data in the form of packets.
USIM Card	Use the handset with this card inserted. The card stores subscriber information such as your phone number and handset data. You can also save Contacts list entries and other data to the card. When you replace your handset, use of the same USIM card in the new handset enables you to continue using the data stored on the card.
PIN	An abbreviation for Personal Identification Number. A number required for using the USIM card with your handset. This number allows you to prevent others from using your handset in the event that your handset is lost or stolen.
MMS	A service that allows long text messages with picture, video and melody attachments to be exchanged.
SMS	A service that allows short text messages to be exchanged between handsets.
WAP Push Message	The latest information sent automatically as a WAP Push message (server initiated rather than user requested) when you have registered with an auto delivery service.
SSL	A communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates.
FeliCa	FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. Data can be exchanged by simply placing an IC card near a reader/writer. The handset can be used as electronic money and membership cards because this technology enables it to manage multiple data items internally.

Term	Definition
Server Certificate	A digital certificate for identifying that a site on a server is trustworthy. The server certificate includes information necessary for SSL communication (encrypted communication), server information and a digital signature of a Certificate Authority to verify that the server is authentic.
Cache	The location in the handset for temporarily storing the data of displayed Web pages, etc.
V-appli	Applications including games and 3D images that can be downloaded from the Web pages of V-appli providers. Some applications connect to the network to obtain information in real time and some applications can be activated as wallpaper.

Index

Numeric

3D Pictogram Display 169

A

Accessories 2

Adding a New Appointment 283

Alarm Tone 243

Alarms 287

Answerphone

 Playing a Message 258

 Recording 59

 Setting 257

Any Key Answer 266

Appearance Check 119

Assign to Contact (Camera) 136, 137

Authentication Password 315

Authentication PIN Code 307

Auto Answer 118, 258

Auto Launch 184

B

Background Playback 104

Backlight (Media Player) 107

Backlight (V-appli) 189

Backlight (Video Call) 119

Backlights (Display) 249

Backup (Infrared) 318

Backup (Memory Card) 298

Backup (USB Cable) 323

Backup (Vodafone Address Book) 334

Barcode 300

Battery 45

Battery Alarm 242

Beat Engine Box 100

Birthday Notification 325

Bluetooth™ 307

Bookmarks 179, 180

Browser Settings 184

C

Calculator 290

Calendar 283

Call

 Answering a Call 59

 Answering a Video Call 112

 Making a Call 58

 Making a Video Call 111

 Placing a Call on Hold 59, 60, 113

Call Barring Service 70

Call Barring Service Code 57

Call Cost 64

Call Diverting Service 68

Call Log 62

Call Sender 171

Call Time 63

Call Waiting Service 72

Caller ID 264

Camera Modes 121, 128

Cell Information 250

Centre Access Code 57

Certification 184

Changing the Name of a Registered

Bluetooth™ Compatible Device 309

Changing the Name of Your Handset

(Bluetooth™) 311

Changing Your Mail Address 151

Charging the Battery Pack 46, 324

Checking Appointments 285

Client Update 334

Clock Display 247

 12-hour and 24-hour Clock 248

 External Display 248

 Main Display 247

Codes 57

 Call Barring Service Code 57

 Centre Access Code 57

 Security Code 57

Colour Control 146

Confirming the memory status 81, 98,
124, 220, 277
Contacts List 81
Contrast 251
Converter 291
Copy Text 172, 173
Copying Contacts List Entries 233
Copying Entries from the USIM Card 233
Copying Entries to the USIM Card 233
Countdown Timer 294
Creating & Sending Message (MMS) 153
Creating & Sending Message (SMS) 164
Creating a vObject 228
Custom Screens 245
Customer Service 360

D

Data Folder 220
Date & Time 53
Date Stamp 142
Daylight Saving Time 55
Delay Timer 145
Deleting a Registered Bluetooth™
Compatible Device 309
Details of Your Handset (Bluetooth™) 310
Dialled Numbers 62
Dial-up Connections (Bluetooth™) 314
Dial-up Connections (Infrared) 318
Dial-up Connections (USB Cable) 323

Dictionary 289
Displaying a Grid 142
Displaying Details (Bluetooth™) 309, 310
Displaying Files on a TV 225
Downloading 183, 187, 195, 213, 222
Drafts 174

E

Earpiece Volume 61, 265
Editing Picture 131
Editing Text 77
Edy 209
Effects 147
Emergency Calls 44
Enter URL 177
Equalizer 103
Exposure Control 126, 138, 147
External Device 280
External Light 254
 Incoming 255
 Notification 254
External Navigation Key 41
External Soft Keys 41
Extract 171, 173

F

FeliCa 209
File Name (Camera) 148
File Playback Time 157
File Select Mode 182

Files Storable in Data Folder 221
Fixed Dialling Numbers 273
Flashlight 303
Formatting a Memory Card 229
Forward 161, 171, 173
Frame Setting 129
Function List 340

G

General Notes for Handling 19
Glossary 351

H

Handsfree 313, 314
History 196
Hold 276
Hold Guidance (Video Call) 119

I

IC-appli 209
IC Card 209
IC Card Lock 215, 217
Image Quality (Video Call) 116
Importing a vObject 228
Incoming Display 246
Incoming External Light 85, 87, 255
Incoming Voice Calls during Data
Communication 261
Indicators
 Camera 122
 External Display 37

- Information Prompt 39
- Main Display 34
- MMS 158, 160
- SMS 166, 167
- Video Call 110
- Information Prompt 39
- Infrared 315
- Initialising Your Handset 277
- International Call Service 262
- Internet Settings 279

K

- Key Guard 275
- Keypad Shortcuts (Camera) 148

L

- Language Setting 52
- Load 172
- Location 198
- Location Logs 198
- Location Property 184, 207

M

- Macro Mode 144
- Mail List 161
- Main Menu 56
- Manage Folder 171
- Managing Appointments 286
- Map URL 205
- Media Player 100
- Media Player Settings 107

- Melody&Music 220
- Memory Card 47, 229
- Memory manager 184
- Missed Calls 62
- MMS 153
- MMS Settings 162
- MMS/SMS Common Operations 169
- Mobile Light (Camera) 145
- Mode Settings 236
 - Car 236
 - Meeting 236
 - Normal 236
 - Personalising Profiles 237
 - Silent 236
- Move to USIM/Phone 172, 173
- Moving Contacts List Entries 231
- Moving Entries from the USIM Card 232
- Moving Entries to the USIM Card 231
- Moving Messages from the USIM Card 234
- Moving Messages to the USIM Card 234
- Moving SMS Messages 234
- Multi Shots 129
- Multiparty Call Service 74
- Music File Information 321
- Music Player 108
- Music Transfer Mode 320, 321
- Music Transfer Mode Confirmation Screen 322
- Mute 60, 74, 114, 224, 259

- My Favourites 106
- My Locations 198

N

- NAVI Applications 199
- Navigation Key 6, 253
- Network
 - Application Settings 278
 - Select Network 49

- Night Mode 128
- Notepad 295
- Number Memo 296

O

- Offline Mode 256
- One-touch Answering 261
- One-touch Calling 260
- Open to Answer 266
- Operator Name Display 249
- Outgoing Video (Video Call) 117
- Owner information 98

P

- Parts & Functions 31
- Password 71, 268, 315, 329
- Phone Lock 269
- Phonebook 81
- Phonebook Lock 97
- Pictographs (Text Entry) 76
- Picture Quality (Camera) 141
- Picture Size (Camera) 127, 131

PIN Codes 43, 267
PIN1/PIN2 43, 267
Play 171, 173
Play Modes 103
Playlist 105
Positioning Lock 206
Power On/Off 48
Power Saving 250
Preview Setting 147
Privacy Settings 207
PUK Codes 43, 268
PUK1/PUK2 43, 268

Q

QR Code 300
Quick Positioning 204

R

Received Calls 62
Received Messages (MMS) 158
Received Messages (SMS) 166
Receiving Complete MMS Messages 159
Receiving Data (Bluetooth™) 312
Receiving Data (Infrared) 316
Receiving Data (USB Cable) 323
Receiving Settings (MMS) 162
Recipient List 155, 165
Record Modes 121, 140
Recording a Message with the
Answerphone 59

Recording Other Party's Voice 61
Recording Sound 292
Recording Sound (Camera) 140
Recording Videos 137
Registering a Bluetooth™ Enabled Device 308
Rejecting Incoming Calls 59, 270
Rejecting Messages 272
Remote Lock 215
Reply 171
Reset Settings 94, 189
Response to Detection by Other
Bluetooth™ Compatible Devices 310
Restore (Vodafone Address Book) 335
Restoring Data (Infrared) 318
Restoring Data (Memory Card) 299
Restoring Data (USB Cable) 323
Retrieve 171
Retrieve MMS 159
Retrieving Network Information 280
Ringtone 85, 238
Ringtone Volume 85, 237

S

Safety Precautions 7
Save as Template 172, 173
Save Sender 171
Screen Settings (Camera) 142, 143, 148
Screen Settings (Video Call) 115, 116
Screensaver 188

Secret Mode 273
Security Code 57, 268
Send (Camera) 126, 138
Sending a Picture (Video Call) 116
Sending Data (Bluetooth™) 311
Sending Data (Infrared) 316
Sending Data (USB Cable) 322
Sending Settings (MMS) 163
Sent Messages (MMS) 160
Sent Messages (SMS) 167
Server Mail Box 161
Server Profile 331, 337, 338
Server Update 334
Server URL 332
Setting Handsfree 314
Setting the Phone Number 260
Shortcut Keys
 Navigation Key 253
 Side Up Key 252
Shortcut Menu 281
Shutter Sound 142
SMS 164
SMS Settings 168
Snooze 288
Soft Keys 6
Speaker Volume 113, 265
Specifications 350
Speed Calling 92

- Start & End Sounds 144
- Stereo Handsfree Headset 259
- Storage Capacity 349
- Storage Place (Camera) 145
- Surround 103
- Switch Screens (Video Call) 115
- Switching between the Earpiece & Speaker 61, 114
- Synchronisation Cycle 333
- Synchronisation Log 338
- Synchronisation Mode 333
- Synchronisation Type 334
- System Mode 49

T

- Taking Pictures 125
- Template (MMS) 156
- Template (SMS) 165
- Text Entry Modes 75
 - abc/Abc/ABC 75
 - English Entry (T9) 75
 - Japanese Entry 75
 - Numeric 75
 - Symbols 75
 - T9 abc/T9 Abc/T9 ABC 75
- Touch Tones 304
- Trademarks and Patents 25
- Transferring data (Bluetooth™) 307
- Transferring data (Infrared) 315

- Transferring data (USB Cable) 319
- Transferring Music Files 321
- Trust Device (Bluetooth™) 308
- TV display 225, 226

U

- Unsent Messages 175
- USB 319
- USIM Card 42, 231

V

- V-appli 185
 - Download 187
 - Managing 190
 - Security Settings 190
 - Settings 189
 - Starting 188
- Vibration 85, 87, 189, 239, 287
- Video Encode 140
- Video Quality 143
- Video Size 138
- vObject 227
- Vodafone Address Book 325
- Vodafone live! 177
- Vodafone live! CAST 192
- Vodafone live! NAVI 198
- Voice Cancel 103
- Voice Recorder 292
 - During a Call 61
 - Playing Recordings 293

- Recording Sound 292

- Voicemail 66

W

- Wallpaper 244
- WAP Push Messages 166
- Warranty & After Sales Service 358
- White Balance 146
- World Clock 297
 - Setting 54
- Viewer 297

Z

- Zoom (Camera) 126, 138
- Zoom (Video Call) 115

Warranty & After Sales Service

Note

Vodafone and Toshiba assumes no responsibility for damages to you or third parties as a result of a failure, malfunction or faulty operation of the product.

Warranty

A warranty card is included with the handset. Carefully read the card and check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled in correctly. Then, store it in a safe place.

Note

- Data and settings may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of your handset. It is, therefore, recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data such as Contacts list data. Vodafone and Toshiba assumes no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data (contents of the Contacts list, Data Folder, etc.) and settings as a result of failure or repair of your handset.
- Disassembling or modifying the handset is in violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Tip

If you have any inquiries with regards to the after sales service, contact your nearest Vodafone Shop or Vodafone General Information (page 360).

After Sales Service

Be sure to refer to "Troubleshooting" (page 347) before submitting your handset for repair. If you are still having problems with your handset, contact your nearest Vodafone Shop or Vodafone General Information (page 360).

Repair within warranty period

Repair is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.

Repair after warranty period

Repair is carried out if possible and the handset owner is responsible for any repair costs.

- ◆ During repair, parts may be replaced with used parts that meet our quality standards.

Customer Service

If you have any questions about a Vodafone handset or service, please call General Information. For service or handset repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

Vodafone Customer Centres

From a Vodafone handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

Vodafone International Call Centre

From outside Japan, dial
+81-3-5351-3491 (Please take care to dial the correct number. International charges will apply to this call.)

Call These Numbers Toll Free from Fixed Line Phones

Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane	General Information	 0088-259-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-259-113
Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi	General Information	 0088-247-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-247-113
Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-250-113